2011 Chevrolet Colorado Owner Manual

In Brief 1-1
- Instrument Panel 1-2
- Initial Drive Information 1-3
- Vehicle Features 1-12
- Performance and Maintenance 1-15

Keys, Doors and Windows ... 2-1
- Keys and Locks 2-2
- Doors 2-7
- Vehicle Security 2-9
- Exterior Mirrors 2-13
- Interior Mirrors 2-14
- Windows 2-16

Seats and Restraints 3-1
- Head Restraints 3-2
- Front Seats 3-3
- Rear Seats 3-9
- Safety Belts 3-12
- Airbag System 3-28
- Child Restraints 3-41

Storage 4-1
- Storage Compartments 4-1

Instruments and Controls 5-1
- Controls 5-2
- Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-6
- Information Displays 5-19
- Vehicle Messages 5-22

Lighting 6-1
- Exterior Lighting 6-1
- Interior Lighting 6-6
- Lighting Features 6-7

Infotainment System 7-1
- Introduction 7-1
- Radio 7-7
- Audio Players 7-14
- Phone 7-20

Climate Controls 8-1
- Climate Control Systems 8-1
- Air Vents 8-3

Driving and Operating 9-1
- Driving Information 9-2
- Starting and Operating 9-26
- Engine Exhaust 9-33
- Automatic Transmission 9-35
- Manual Transmission 9-37
- Drive Systems 9-39
- Brakes 9-43
- Ride Control Systems 9-46
- Cruise Control 9-49
- Fuel 9-51
- Towing 9-56
- Conversions and Add-Ons ... 9-67

Vehicle Care 10-1
- General Information 10-3
- Vehicle Checks 10-4
- Headlamp Aiming 10-35
- Bulb Replacement 10-35
- Electrical System 10-39
- Wheels and Tires 10-46
- Jump Starting 10-84
- Towing 10-87
- Appearance Care 10-93

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Service and Maintenance ... 11-1
General Information 11-1
Scheduled Maintenance 11-2
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts 11-6
Maintenance Records 11-10

Technical Data 12-1
Vehicle Identification 12-1
Vehicle Data 12-2

Customer Information 13-1
Customer Information 13-1
Reporting Safety Defects 13-14
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-16

Index i-1

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, CHEVROLET, the CHEVROLET Emblem, and COLORADO are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle either because they are options that you did not purchase or due to changes subsequent to the printing of this owner manual. Please refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm each of the features found on your vehicle. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Limited” for Chevrolet Motor Division wherever it appears in this manual.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Canadian Vehicle Owners

Propriétaires Canadiens

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer or from:

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès du concessionnaire ou à l'adresse suivante:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123
Numéro de poste 6438 de langue française
www.helminc.com

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 20819998 B Second Printing

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

©2010 General Motors LLC. All Rights Reserved.

Using this Manual

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions

Warning messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce them.

Danger indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which will result in serious injury or death.

Warning or **Caution** indicates a hazard that could result in injury or death.

⚠ WARNING
These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

Notice: **This means there is something that could result in property or vehicle damage. This would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty.**

A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see your owner manual for additional instructions or information.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see a service manual for additional instructions or information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the Index.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: OnStar® Hands-Free Phone

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Fog Lamps

: Fuel Gauge

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: LATCH System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Safety Belt Reminders

: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Traction Control

: Windshield Washer Fluid

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

✍ NOTES

Information Provided by
DEALER E-PROCESS

In Brief

Instrument Panel
Instrument Panel 1-2

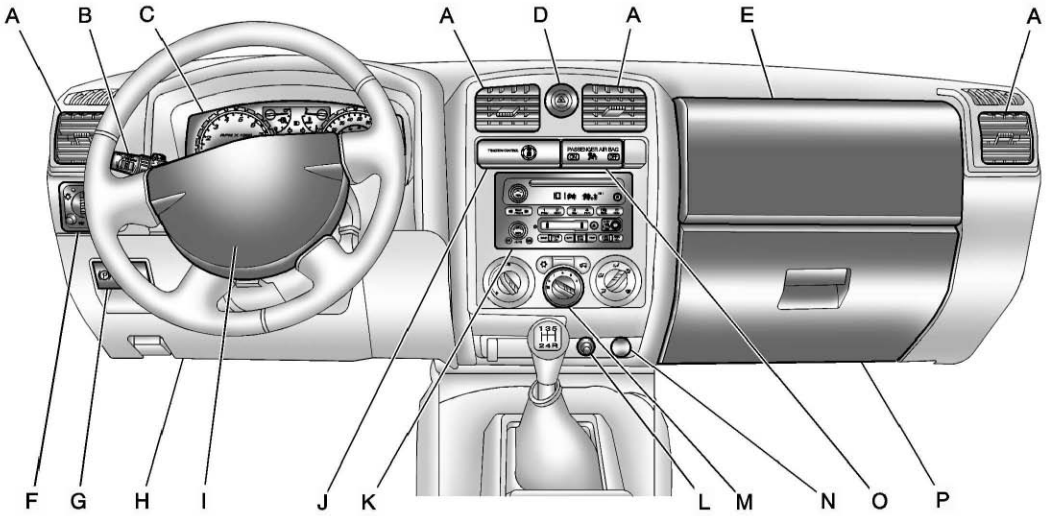
Initial Drive Information
Initial Drive Information 1-3
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 1-3
Door Locks 1-4
Tailgate 1-4
Windows 1-5
Seat Adjustment 1-5
Heated Seats 1-6
Head Restraint Adjustment 1-7
Safety Belts 1-7
Sensing System for Passenger Airbag 1-7
Mirror Adjustment 1-8
Steering Wheel Adjustment . . . 1-9
Interior Lighting 1-9
Exterior Lighting 1-10
Windshield Wiper/Washer 1-10
Climate Controls 1-11
Four-Wheel Drive 1-11

Vehicle Features
Radio(s) 1-12
Satellite Radio 1-13
Cruise Control 1-14
Driver Information Center (DIC) 1-14
Power Outlets 1-14

Performance and Maintenance
Traction Control System (TCS) 1-15
StabiliTrak® System 1-15
Tire Pressure Monitor 1-15
Engine Oil Life System 1-16
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 1-16
Roadside Assistance Program 1-16
OnStar® 1-17

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Panel



Manual Transmission shown, Automatic Transmission similar

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A. *Air Vents on page 8-3*.

B. Turn and Lane-Change Lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-4*.

Windshield Wiper/Washer on page 5-2.

C. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-7*.

D. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-4*.

E. Passenger Side Airbag. See *Airbag System on page 3-28*.

F. *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

Fog Lamps on page 6-5 (If Equipped).

Exterior Cargo Lamps on page 6-5.

G. *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.

H. Data Link Connector (DLC) (Out of View). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-12*.

I. *Horn on page 5-2*.

J. *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47*.

Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-30.

K. *Infotainment on page 7-1*.

L. Cigarette Lighter (If Equipped). See *Ashtrays on page 5-6* and *Cigarette Lighter on page 5-5*.

M. *Climate Control Systems on page 8-1*.

N. *Power Outlets on page 5-5*.

O. *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-11*.

P. *Glove Box on page 4-1*.

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner manual.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The RKE transmitter is used to lock and unlock the doors from up to 9 m (30 ft) away from the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Press UNLOCK to unlock the doors and press LOCK to lock them.

Press to sound the horn and to flash the exterior lamps for 30 seconds.

Lock and unlock feedback can be personalized. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-19*.

See *Keys on page 2-2* and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

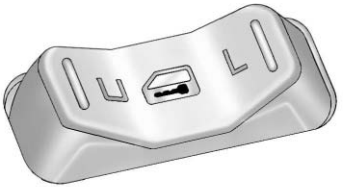
Door Locks

Manual Door Locks

Lock or unlock the door from the outside with the key in the driver or front passenger door or press the LOCK or UNLOCK button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Lock the door from the inside by moving the manual lever on the door forward or rearward.

Power Door Locks

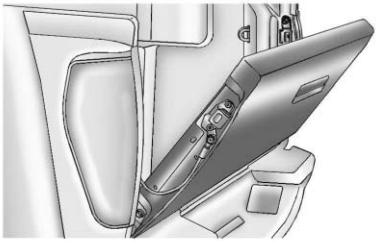


Press L or U on the switch on the armrest to lock or unlock the doors.

For more information see:

- *Door Locks on page 2-5*.
- *Power Door Locks on page 2-5*.

Tailgate



Open the tailgate by pulling up on the outside handle while pulling the tailgate down.

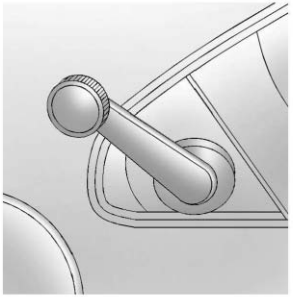
On vehicles with a locking tailgate, use the ignition key to unlock it.

For more information see *Tailgate on page 2-7*.

Information Provided by DEALER E-PROCESS

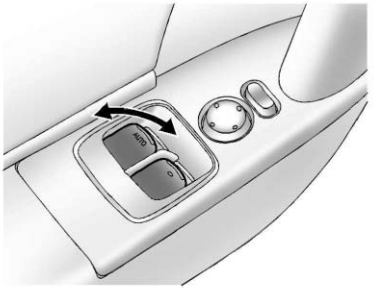
Windows

Manual Windows



Use the window crank to open and close each window.

Power Windows



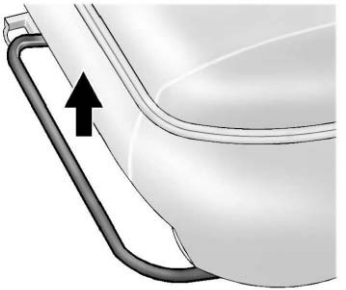
Press or pull up on the front of the switch to open or close the window.

For more information see:

- *Manual Windows on page 2-16*.
- *Power Windows on page 2-17*.

Seat Adjustment

Manual Seats



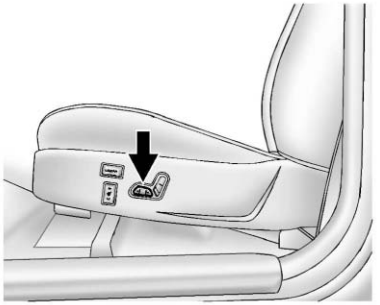
To adjust a manual seat:

1. Lift the bar under the front of the seat cushion to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to make sure it is locked in place.

See *Seat Adjustment on page 3-3* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Seats



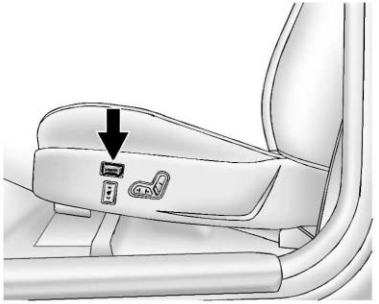
To adjust a power seat, if available:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front or rear part of the seat cushion by moving the front or rear of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire control up or down.

Use the vertical control to adjust the seatback.

See *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-4* and *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-5* for more information.

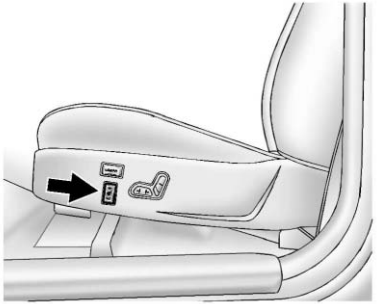
Power Lumbar



If available, press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or decrease lumbar support. Release the control when the level of support is reached.

See *Lumbar Adjustment on page 3-4* for more information.

Heated Seats



If available, the switches are on the outboard sides of the front seats. To operate, the ignition must be on.

- Press the top of the switch for the high setting.
- Press the bottom of the switch for the low setting.
- Put the switch in the center position to turn this feature off.

See *Heated Front Seats on page 3-8* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Head Restraint Adjustment

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

For more information see *Head Restraints on page 3-2* and *Seat Adjustment on page 3-3*.

Safety Belts

Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use safety belts properly.

- *Safety Belts on page 3-12*.
- *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly on page 3-15*.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-21*.
- *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49*.

Sensing System for Passenger Airbag

The passenger sensing system, if equipped, will turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver airbags are not affected by this.

If the vehicle has one of the passenger airbag status indicators pictured in the following illustrations, then the vehicle has a passenger sensing system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible on the instrument panel when the vehicle is started.

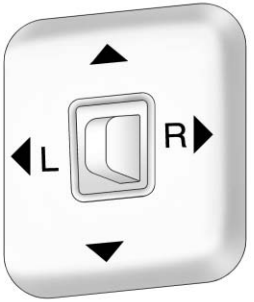
United States

Canada and Mexico

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-34* for important information.

Mirror Adjustment

Exterior Mirrors



Vehicles with power outside mirrors have controls located on the driver door.

1. Move the selector switch to the L (left) or R (right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press one of the four arrows located on the control pad to move the mirror to the desired direction.
3. Return the selector switch to the center position once the mirrors are adjusted.

See *Power Mirrors on page 2-14*.

Vehicles with manual outside mirrors can be adjusted by pressing the mirror up and down and left and right so that you can see a clear view behind you.

Manually fold the mirrors inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, push the mirror toward the vehicle. Push the mirror outward, to return to its original position.

See *Manual Mirrors on page 2-13*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior Mirror

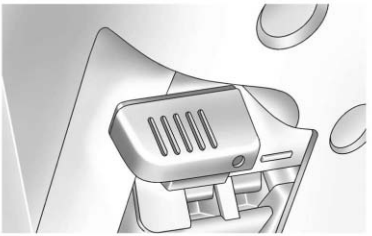
On vehicles with a manual inside rearview mirror, the mirror can be adjusted by holding it in the center to move it for a clear view behind you. To avoid glare from the headlamps behind you, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use.

See *Manual Rearview Mirror on page 2-14*.

The automatic dimming inside rearview mirror will automatically reduce the glare of lights from behind the vehicle.

See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror on page 2-15*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment



The steering wheel adjustment lever is located on the left side of the steering wheel.

To adjust:

1. Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever toward you.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Release the lever to lock the wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior Lighting

Dome Lamps

The dome lamps come on when any door is opened.

To manually turn on the dome lamps, turn the thumbwheel, located next to the exterior lamps control, all the way up. The cargo lamps may come on, if the vehicle is equipped with Bluetooth. In this position, the lamps remain on whether a door is opened or closed.

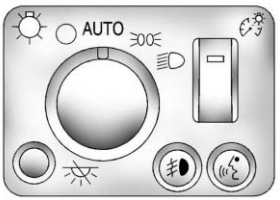
Reading Lamps

Press the lens on the lamps to turn each reading lamp on or off.

These lamps will not come on with the dome lamps.

- See “Dome Lamp Override” in *Dome Lamps on page 6-6*.
- *Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-6*.
- *Exit Lighting on page 6-7*.

Exterior Lighting



⏻ : Turns off all exterior lamps including the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

AUTO: Automatic operation of the headlamps and other exterior lamps at normal brightness.

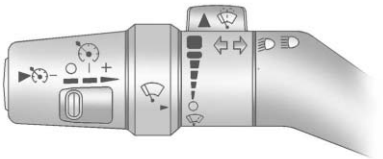
: Manual operation of the parking lamps and other exterior lamps.

: Manual operation of the headlamps and other exterior lamps.

For more information, see:

- *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.
- *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) on page 6-2*.
- *Automatic Headlamp System on page 6-3*.
- *Fog Lamps on page 6-5*.
- *Exterior Cargo Lamps on page 6-5*.

Windshield Wiper/Washer



: Use for a single wipe, move the band to and then release it. For several wipes, hold the band on longer.

: For adjustable interval wipes, turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

: Use for slow wipes. Turn the band to the first solid position past the delay settings.

: Use for fast wipes. Turn the band to the second solid position past the delay settings.

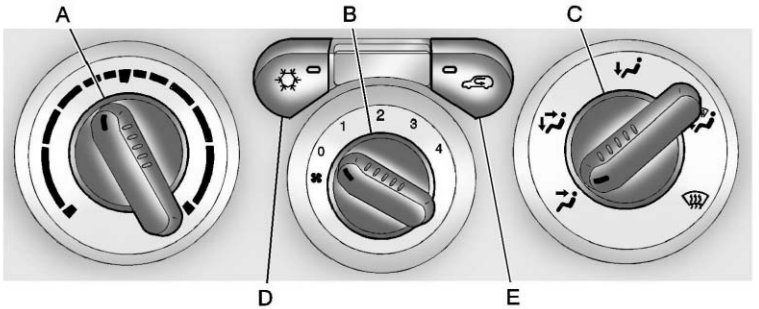
: Use to turn the wipers off.

Windshield Washer: Push the paddle on top of the turn signal/lane change lever to spray washer fluid on the windshield.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer on page 5-2*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Climate Controls



A. Temperature Control
B. Fan Control
C. Air Delivery Mode Control
D. Air Conditioning
E. Air Recirculation

See *Climate Control Systems on page 8-1*.

Four-Wheel Drive

Four-wheel drive sends engine power to all four wheels for extra traction.

The transfer case buttons are located to the right of the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

Use these buttons to shift into and out of four-wheel drive.

2 ↑ (Two-Wheel High): Use for driving in most street and highway situations.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.

N (Neutral): Use the N (Neutral) position only when towing the vehicle. See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-88*.

4 ↑ (Four-Wheel High): Use when extra traction is needed in most off-road situations.

4 ↓ (Four-Wheel Low): Use this position to deliver extra torque to all four wheels. Used for extreme off-road conditions. See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-39*.

Vehicle Features

Radio(s)

Radio with CD (MP3/WMA)

PWR: Press to turn the system on and off.

◀ VOL ▶: Turn to increase or decrease the volume.

BAND: Press to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped). The selection displays.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

◀ **TUNE** ▶ **:** Turn to select radio stations.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ **:** Press to go to the previous or to the next station and stay there.

For more information about these and other radio features, see *Infotainment on page 7-1*.

Setting Preset Stations

Radio stations are stored as presets.

For vehicles with an XM radio, a maximum of 30 stations can be stored as presets using the six numbered pushbuttons.

If the radio does not have XM, up to 18 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM), can be programmed on the six numbered buttons.

See “Setting Preset Stations” under *Operation on page 7-3*.

Setting the Clock

To set the time and date for the radio with CD (MP3/WMA):

Press and hold the HR button until the correct hour displays. Press and hold the MIN button until the correct minute displays. The time can be set with the ignition on or off.

To synchronize the time with an FM station broadcasting Radio Data System (RDS) information, press and hold the HR and MIN buttons at the same time until RDS TIME displays. To accept this time, press and hold the HR and MIN buttons, at the same time, for another two seconds. If the time is not available from the station, NO UPDAT (update) displays.

RDS time is broadcast once a minute. After tuning to an RDS broadcast station, it could take a few minutes for the time to update.

For detailed instructions on setting the clock for your specific audio system, see *Clock on page 5-4*.

Satellite Radio

XM is a satellite radio service based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM satellite radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast to coast, and in digital-quality sound.

A fee is required to receive the XM service.

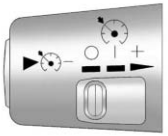
For more information, refer to:

- www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 (U.S.)
- www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677 (Canada)

See *Satellite Radio on page 7-11*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cruise Control



The cruise controls are located at the end of the multifunction lever.

◯ **:** Turns the system off.

| **:** Turns the system on.

+ (Resume/Accelerate): Use to make the vehicle accelerate or resume a previously set speed.

▶ **(Set):** Press the button at the end of the lever to set the speed.

For more information, see *Cruise Control on page 9-49*.

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC is located on the instrument panel cluster. It displays the status of many vehicle systems and enables some features to be personalized.

Use the trip reset stem located on the instrument panel cluster to scroll through the available functions. For more information, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-19*.

Vehicle Personalization

Some vehicle features can be personalized through the DIC. These features include:

- Language: English, Spanish, or French
- Automatic Door Locks
- RKE Feedback

For more information, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-19*.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle may have an accessory power outlet located below the climate control system and on the rear of the center console.

See *Power Outlets on page 5-5*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control System (TCS)

The traction control system limits wheel spin. The system turns on automatically every time the vehicle is started.

- To turn off traction control, press and release on the instrument panel. illuminates and the appropriate DIC message is displayed. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-25*.
- Press and release the button again to turn on traction control.

For more information, see *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-46*.

StabiliTrak® System

The Electronic Stability Control system assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. The system turns on automatically every time the vehicle is started.

- To turn off both traction control and Electronic Stability Control, press and hold until illuminates and the appropriate DIC message is displayed. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-25*.
- Press and release the button again to turn on both systems.

For more information, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47*.

Tire Pressure Monitor

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).

The TPMS warning light alerts you to a significant loss in pressure of one of the vehicle's tires. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*. The warning light will remain on until the tire pressure is corrected.

During cooler conditions, the low tire pressure warning light may appear when the vehicle is first started and then turn off. This may be an early indicator that the tire pressures are getting low and the tires need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The TPMS does not replace normal monthly tire maintenance. It is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressures.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 10-54*.

Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and displays a DIC message when it is necessary to change the engine oil and filter.

Resetting the Oil Life System

1. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN, with the engine off.
2. Press and release the stem in the lower center of the instrument cluster until the OIL LIFE message is displayed.
3. Once the alternating OIL LIFE and RESET messages appear, press and hold the stem until several beeps sound. This confirms that the oil life system has been reset.
4. Turn the key to LOCK/OFF.

See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*.

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Roadside Assistance Program

U.S.: **1-800-243-8872**

TTY Users (U.S.): **1-888-889-2438**

Canada: **1-800-268-6800**

Mexico: **01-800-466-0800**

As the owner of a new Chevrolet, you are automatically enrolled in the Roadside Assistance program.

See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-9* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Roadside Assistance and OnStar (U.S. and Canada)

If you have an active OnStar subscription, press the button and the current GPS location will be sent to an OnStar advisor who will assess your problem, contact Roadside Assistance, and relay your exact location to get the help you need.

Online Owner Center (U.S. and Canada)

The Online Owner Center is a complimentary service that includes online service reminders, vehicle maintenance tips, online owner manual, special privileges, and more.

Sign up today at: **www.chevyownercenter.com** (U.S.) or **www.gm.ca** (Canada).

OnStar®

For vehicles with an active OnStar subscription, OnStar uses several innovative technologies and live Advisors to provide a wide range of safety, security, navigation, diagnostics, and calling services.

Automatic Crash Response

In a crash, built-in sensors can automatically alert an OnStar Advisor who is immediately connected to the vehicle to see if you need help.

How OnStar Service Works

: Push this blue button to connect to a specially trained OnStar Advisor to verify your account information and to answer questions.

: Push this red emergency button to get priority help from specially trained OnStar Emergency Advisors.

: Push this button for hands-free, voice-activated calling and to give voice commands for Hands-Free Calling and Turn-by-Turn Navigation.

Automatic Crash Response, Emergency Services, Crisis Assist, Stolen Vehicle Assistance, Vehicle Diagnostics, Remote Door Unlock, Roadside Assistance, Turn-by-Turn Navigation, and Hands-Free Calling are available on most vehicles. Not all OnStar services are available on all vehicles. For more information, see the OnStar Owner's Guide; visit www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada); contact OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or TTY 1-877-248-2080; or push to speak with an OnStar Advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

For a full description of OnStar services and system limitations, see the OnStar Owner's Guide in the glove box.

OnStar service is subject to the OnStar Terms and Conditions included in the OnStar Glove Box Kit.

OnStar service requires wireless communication networks and the Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite network. Not all OnStar services are available everywhere or on all vehicles at all times.

OnStar service can't work unless your vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area, and the wireless service provider has coverage, network capacity, reception, and technology compatible with OnStar's service. Service involving location information about your vehicle can't work unless GPS signals are available, unobstructed, and compatible with the OnStar hardware. The vehicle has to have a working electrical system and adequate battery power for the OnStar equipment to operate. OnStar service may not work if the OnStar equipment isn't properly installed or you haven't maintained it and your vehicle is in good working order and in compliance with all government regulations. If you try to add, connect, or modify any equipment or software in your vehicle, OnStar service may not work. Other problems OnStar can't control may prevent service to you, such as hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather, electrical system design and architecture of your vehicle, damage to important parts of your vehicle in a crash, or wireless phone network congestion or jamming.

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-17* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

Your Responsibility

Increase the volume of the radio if the OnStar Advisor cannot be heard.

If the light next to the OnStar buttons is red, the system may not be functioning properly. Push the button and request a vehicle diagnostic. If the light appears clear (no light appears), your OnStar subscription has expired and all services have been deactivated.

Push the button to confirm that the OnStar equipment is active.

OnStar®

If the vehicle is equipped with an active OnStar system, that system may also record data in crash or near crash-like situations. The OnStar Terms and Conditions provides information on data collection and use and is available in the OnStar Glove Box Kit, at www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada), or by pushing and speaking to an Advisor.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Keys, Doors and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 2-2
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-3
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-3
Door Locks 2-5
Power Door Locks 2-5
Automatic Door Locks 2-6
Lockout Protection 2-6
Safety Locks (Crew Cab) 2-6

Doors
Rear Doors (Extended Cab) 2-7
Tailgate 2-7

Vehicle Security
Vehicle Security 2-9
Anti-Theft Alarm System 2-9
Immobilizer 2-11
Immobilizer Operation (PASS-Key III+ Canada Only) 2-11
Immobilizer Operation (Passlock U.S. Only) 2-12

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 2-13
Manual Mirrors 2-13
Power Mirrors 2-14

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rearview Mirror 2-14
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 2-15

Windows
Windows 2-16
Manual Windows 2-16
Power Windows 2-17
Rear Windows 2-18
Sun Visors 2-18

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ WARNING

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. Children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.

The key can be used for the ignition, all door locks, and the tailgate.

The key has a bar-coded key tag that the dealer or qualified locksmith can use to make new keys. Store this information in a safe place, not in your vehicle.

Notice: **If the keys get locked in the vehicle, it may have to be damaged to get them out. Always carry a spare key.**

If you are locked out of your vehicle, call the Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-9*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-17* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

Vehicles with Remote Keyless Entry (RKE), transmitter functions work up to 9 m (30 ft) away from the vehicle.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-3*.

UNLOCK: Press to unlock the driver door and turn on the interior lamps. The parking lamps may flash and the horn may sound.

Press UNLOCK again within three seconds and all of the doors unlock.

LOCK: Press to lock all the doors. The parking lamps may flash and the horn may sound.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If a door is open or ajar when LOCK is pressed, the horn sounds several times to let you know the doors did not lock and the content theft-deterrent system is not armed. Pressing LOCK again while the horn is sounding or within three seconds after the horn stops sounding, the doors lock but the content theft-deterrent system does not arm until the opened door is closed.

Different feedback modes can be programmed through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See "Remote Keyless Entry Feedback" under *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-19*.

(Panic): Press to make the horn sound and the headlamps and taillamps flash for up to 30 seconds. To turn them off wait for 30 seconds, or press again, or start the vehicle.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to the vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be programmed. Any lost or stolen transmitters no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed. Each vehicle can have up to four transmitters programmed to it.

Battery Replacement

Notice: **When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.**

To replace the battery:

1. Separate the transmitter with a flat, thin object inserted in the slot between the covers of the transmitter housing.
2. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
3. Insert the new battery. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
4. Put the transmitter back together.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Door Locks

⚠ WARNING

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.

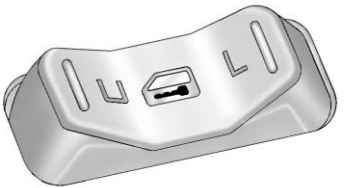
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

To lock or unlock the door from the outside, use the key in the driver or front passenger door or press the LOCK or UNLOCK button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

To lock a door from the inside, move the manual lever on the door forward. To unlock a door from the inside, move the lever on the door rearward.

You will see a colored area on the lever when the door is unlocked.

Power Door Locks



Driver Switch Shown

On vehicles with power door locks, the switches are located on the driver and the front passenger armrests.

Press L to lock all the doors at once. To unlock all the doors, press U.

On crew cab models, use the manual door lock lever on each rear door to lock or unlock the doors from the rear seating areas.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Door Locks

If the vehicle has power door locks and the remote keyless entry system, it has an automatic lock/unlock feature.

If the vehicle has an automatic transmission, it is programmed from the factory to lock all doors automatically when the shift lever is moved out of P (Park). All the doors will unlock when the shift lever is moved back into P (Park).

If the vehicle has a manual transmission, it is programmed from the factory to lock all the doors when the vehicle speed is greater than 24 km/h (15 mph). The doors will unlock when the key is removed from the ignition.

To change the automatic door lock and unlock settings, see "Automatic Door Locks" under *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-19*.

Lockout Protection

If the vehicle has power door locks, this feature protects you from locking the key in the vehicle when the key is in the ignition and a door is open.

If the power door lock switch is pressed when a door is open and the key is in the ignition, all of the doors will lock and then the driver door will unlock.

Safety Locks (Crew Cab)

If the vehicle is a crew cab model, it may have rear door security locks. With this feature, the rear doors are locked so they cannot be opened from the inside.

The rear door security lock is located on the inside edge of each rear door below the security lock label.

To engage the security locks:

1. Open one of the rear doors.
2. Using the ignition key, turn the lock to the horizontal position.
3. Close the door.
4. Repeat these steps on the other rear door.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To open a rear door when the security lock is on, unlock the door and open the door from the outside.

To disengage the security locks:

1. Open one of the rear doors.
2. Using the ignition key, turn the lock to the vertical position.
3. Close the door.
4. Repeat these steps on the other rear door.

Doors

Rear Doors (Extended Cab)

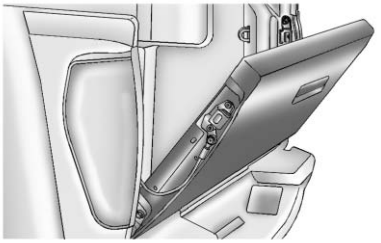
To open a rear door, open the front door. Then, use the handle located on the front edge of the rear door panel to open it. The rear doors must be closed before closing the front door.

Tailgate

⚠ WARNING

It is extremely dangerous to ride on the tailgate, even when the vehicle is operated at low speeds. People riding on the tailgate can easily lose their balance and fall in response to vehicle maneuvers. Falling from a moving vehicle may result in serious injuries or death. Do not allow people to ride on the tailgate. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



Open the tailgate by pulling up on the outside handle while pulling the tailgate down.

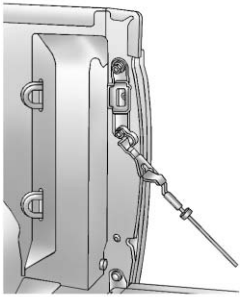
When the tailgate is shut, be sure it is latched securely.

On vehicles with a locking tailgate, use the ignition key. Turn the key counterclockwise to lock the tailgate. Turn the key clockwise to unlock the tailgate.

Tailgate Removal

To remove the tailgate:

1. With the tailgate fully open, lift up slightly on the entire tailgate assembly.



2. Remove the retaining cables from both sides of the tailgate by pulling the clips away from the bolt heads while pushing the cable bracket forward.

   When the larger part of the hole on the bracket is over the bolt, slide the bracket off of the bolt.

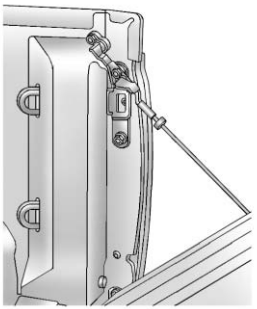
3. With the tailgate partially down, lift up on the passenger side and pull the tailgate toward you, then move the tailgate to the right to release the driver side. You can then remove the entire tailgate assembly.

Reverse the procedure to reinstall the tailgate. Make sure it is secure.

To partially lower the tailgate:

1. With the tailgate fully open, lift up slightly on the entire tailgate assembly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Tailgate Partially Down

2. Remove the retaining cable from the passenger side of the tailgate by pulling the clip away from the bolt head while pushing the cable bracket forward.

   When the larger part of the hole on the bracket is over the bolt, slide the bracket off the bolt.

3. Slide the lower end fitting onto the top bolt. The tailgate will now stay in the partially opened position.
4. Repeat Steps 2 and 3 for the driver side.

If you would like to close the tailgate, the bracket cannot be in the partially opened position. Use the top position on the bracket to anchor it on the bottom bolt.

Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make it impossible to steal.

Anti-Theft Alarm System

If your vehicle has the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system, the vehicle has a content theft-deterrent alarm system.

To activate the content theft-deterrent system:

1. Close all the doors.
2. Lock the doors with the RKE transmitter. The security light, located on the instrument panel cluster, will flash.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the LOCK button on the RKE transmitter is pressed, but a door is open, the horn will chirp six times. Press the LOCK button again, within three seconds, and the doors will lock. Close the open door and the system will be activated.

If a locked door is not opened using the RKE transmitter, or by OnStar®, the pre-alarm will go off. If the engine is not started or UNLOCK not pressed within 10 seconds, the front turn signal lamps will flash for two minutes, and the horn will sound for two minutes, then will turn off to save the battery power.

Remember, the theft-deterrent system will not activate if you lock the doors with a key, the manual door lock, or power door lock switch. The system can only be activated using the RKE transmitter, or by OnStar®. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for additional information. You should also remember that you can start your vehicle with the correct ignition key if the alarm has been set off.

Here is how to avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- If you do not want to activate the theft-deterrent system, the vehicle should be locked with the door key after the doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter. Unlocking a door any other way will set off the alarm.

If you set off the alarm by accident, you can turn off the alarm by pressing UNLOCK on the RKE transmitter. The alarm will not stop if you try to unlock a door any other way.

Testing the Alarm

To test the alarm:

1. From inside the vehicle, activate the system by locking the doors with the RKE transmitter.
2. Unlock the door with the manual door lock and open the door. This should set off the alarm.
3. To turn the alarm off, press the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter or start the engine.

If the alarm does not sound when it should but the lights flash, check to see if the horn works. The horn fuse may be blown. To replace the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 10-40*.

If the alarm does not sound or the front turn signal lamps do not flash, see your dealer for service.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Immobilizer

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-17* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

Immobilizer Operation (PASS-Key III+ Canada Only)

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system is automatically armed when the key is removed from the ignition.

The system is automatically disarmed when the key is turned to ON/RUN.

You do not have to manually arm or disarm the system.

The security light comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The key uses a transponder that matches an immobilizer control unit in the vehicle. Only the correct key starts the vehicle. If the key is ever damaged, the vehicle may not start.

When trying to start the vehicle, if the engine does not start and the security light comes on, there may be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key. Check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 10-40*. If the engine still does not start with the other key, the vehicle needs service. If the vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer who can service the theft-deterrent system and have a new key made.

It is possible for the theft-deterrent system decoder to learn the transponder value of a new or replacement key. Up to 10 keys can be programmed for the vehicle. The following procedure is for programming additional keys only.

Canadian Owners: If the keys are lost or damaged, only a dealer can service the theft-deterrent system to have new ones made. Two current driver's keys are required to program additional keys.

To program a new key:

1. Verify that the new key has PK3 + stamped on it.
2. Insert the current driver's key in the ignition and start the engine. If the engine does not start see your dealer for service.
3. After the engine has started, turn the key to LOCK/OFF, and remove the key.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Insert the second current driver's key in the ignition and start the engine within ten seconds of removing the previous key. If the engine does not start see your dealer for service.
5. After the engine has started, turn the key to LOCK/OFF, and remove the key. Insert the key to be programmed and turn it to ON/RUN within ten seconds of removing the previous key.

   The security light turns off once the key has been programmed.
6. Repeat Steps 1 through 5 if additional keys are to be programmed.

If the security light comes on and stays on while driving, the engine will restart if you turn it off. However, the theft-deterrent system is not working properly and must be serviced by your dealer. The vehicle is not protected by the theft-deterrent system at this time.

In an emergency, contact Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-9*.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

Immobilizer Operation (Passlock U.S. Only)

Passlock® is a passive theft-deterrent system that enables fuel if the vehicle is started with a valid key. If an incorrect key is used or the ignition lock cylinder is tampered with, the fuel system is disabled and the vehicle does not start.

The security light turns off approximately five seconds after the engine is started. See *Security Light on page 5-18*.

If the engine stalls and the security light flashes, wait about 10 minutes until the light stops flashing before trying to restart the engine. Release the key from START as soon as the engine starts.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the engine does not start after three tries, the vehicle needs service.

If the engine is running and the security light comes on, the engine restarts if you turn the engine off. However, the Passlock® system is not working properly and must be serviced by your dealer. The vehicle is not protected by Passlock® at this time. See your dealer for service.

In an emergency, call the Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-9*.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

⚠ WARNING

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

Manual Mirrors

Adjust the mirrors by pressing the mirror up and down and left and right so you can see a clear view behind you.

Manually fold the mirrors inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, push the mirrors toward the vehicle. Push outward, to return the mirrors to their original position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Mirrors

Vehicles with outside power mirrors have controls on the driver door armrest.

To adjust the power mirrors:

1. Move the selector switch to the L (left) or R (right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press one of the four buttons located on the control pad to move the mirror to the desired direction.
3. Return the selector switch to the center position once the mirrors are adjusted.

If the mirror begins making a ratcheting sound, the mirror has reached the end of its travel and can go no farther in that direction. To stop the sound, reverse the mirror direction using the control pad.

Manually fold the mirrors inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, push the mirror toward the vehicle. Push outward, to return the mirror to its original position.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

Adjust this mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle. Hold the mirror in the center to move it up, down, or side-to-side. To reduce headlamp glare, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use.

Vehicles with OnStar® have three additional control buttons located at the bottom of the mirror. See your dealer for more information on the system and how to subscribe to OnStar. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information about the services OnStar provides.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming inside rearview mirror. Automatic dimming reduces the glare of lights from behind the vehicle.

The mirror may also have OnStar® and/or a compass and outside temperature display.

Control buttons for the OnStar system are at the bottom of the mirror. See the OnStar Owners Guide for more information about the services OnStar provides. See *Compass on page 5-3* for more information about the compass display. See "Temperature Display" after, for more information about the outside temperature display.

AUTO/ ○ / ⏻ (On/Off): Press and hold AUTO/ ○ for about three seconds or depending on the mirror, press ⏻ to turn automatic dimming on or off. The automatic dimming feature comes on and the indicator light illuminates each time the vehicle is started.

Temperature Display

⏻ / ⏻ (On/Off) : Press ⏻ or depending on the mirror, press ⏻ to turn the display on or off.

To adjust between Fahrenheit and Celsius:

1. Press and hold ⏻ / ⏻ for a few seconds. The current unit of measure (C or F) flashes.
2. Press ⏻ / ⏻ again and release to change the unit of measure. Wait several seconds and the compass/temperature display returns with the selected unit of measure.

It is normal under certain conditions for the temperature update to be delayed. If an incorrect temperature displays for an extended period, see your dealer.

Cleaning the Mirror

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

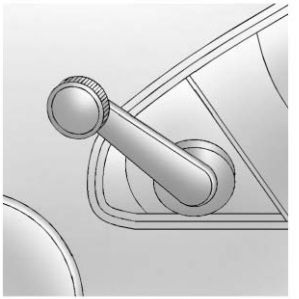
Windows

⚠ WARNING

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.

The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof (if equipped).

Manual Windows



On vehicles with manual windows, use the window crank to open and close each window.

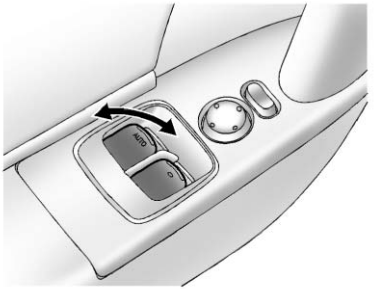
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Windows

⚠ WARNING

Leaving children in a vehicle with the keys is dangerous for many reasons. Children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave keys in a vehicle with children.

When there are children in the rear seat use the window lockout button to prevent unintentional operation of the windows.



On vehicles with power windows, the switches on the driver's door armrest control both windows.

The passenger's door has a window switch that controls that window. Press the front of the switch to open the window. Pull the switch up to close it.

Express-Down Window

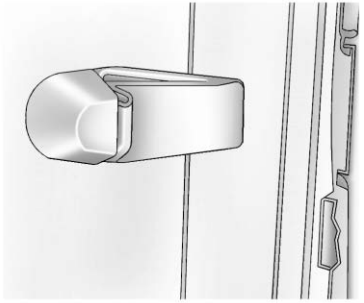
Windows with an express-down feature allow the window to be lowered fully without pressing and holding the switch. Press the front of the switch to the first position, and the window opens a small amount. Press the switch down fully and the window goes all the way down.

To stop the window while it is lowering, pull up the front of the switch.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Windows

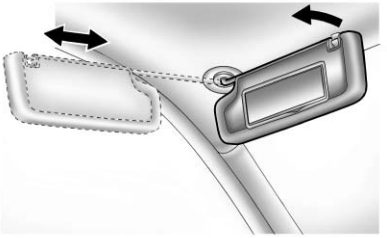
Sliding Rear Window



If the vehicle has this feature, squeeze the latch in the center of the window and slide the glass to open it.

Be sure the latch is engaged when the window is closed.

Sun Visors



Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Detach the sun visor from the center mount to pivot to the side window, or to extend along the rod, if available.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 3-2

Front Seats
Seat Adjustment 3-3
Power Seat Adjustment 3-4
Lumbar Adjustment 3-4
Reclining Seatbacks 3-5
Seatback Latches 3-7
Heated Front Seats 3-8

Rear Seats
Rear Seats (Extended Cab) . . . 3-9
Rear Seats (Crew Cab) 3-10

Safety Belts
Safety Belts 3-12
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 3-15
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-21
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 3-25
Lap Belt 3-26
Safety Belt Extender 3-26
Safety System Check 3-26
Safety Belt Care 3-27
Replacing Safety Belt System Parts After a Crash 3-27

Airbag System
Airbag System 3-28
Where Are the Airbags? 3-29
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 3-31
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 3-32
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 3-32
What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 3-33
Passenger Sensing System 3-34
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 3-38
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle . . . 3-39
Airbag System Check 3-40
Replacing Airbag System Parts After a Crash 3-40

Child Restraints
Older Children 3-41
Infants and Young Children 3-43
Child Restraint Systems 3-46
Where to Put the Restraint . . . 3-47
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 3-49
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash 3-59
Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) 3-60
Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) 3-62
Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) 3-62

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Head Restraints

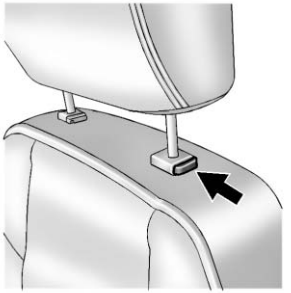
Front Seats

On some crew cab models, the vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

⚠ WARNING

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.



The height of the head restraint can be adjusted. Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.

To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The front seat outboard head restraints are not designed to be removed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Seats

On some crew cab models, the vehicle's rear seats have adjustable headrests in the outboard seating positions that can be adjusted the same way as the front head restraints.

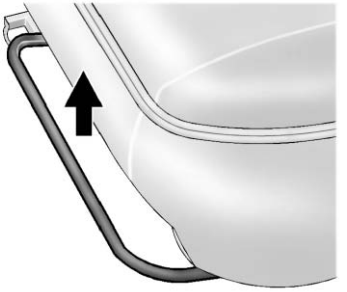
Rear outboard headrests are not designed to be removed.

Front Seats

Seat Adjustment

⚠ WARNING

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

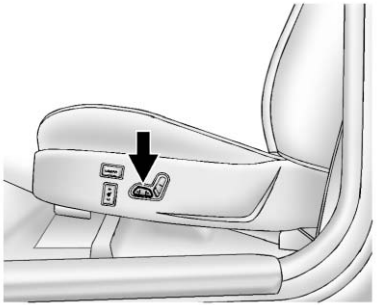


To adjust the seat:

1. Lift the bar under the front edge of the seat cushion to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure the seat is locked in place.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Seat Adjustment



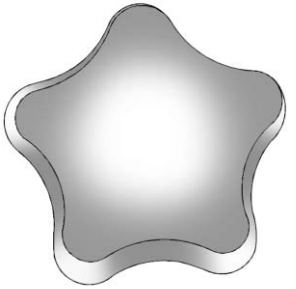
To adjust the seat, if available:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front or rear part of the seat cushion by moving the front or rear of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire control up or down.

To adjust the seatback, see “Power Reclining Seatbacks” under *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-5*.

Lumbar Adjustment

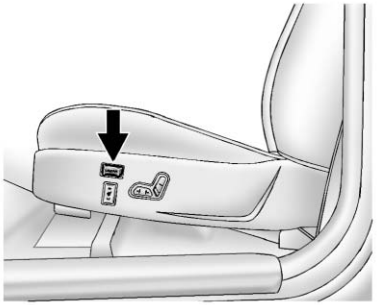
Manual Lumbar



If available, the manual lumbar knob is on the outboard side of the driver seat.

Turn the knob to increase or decrease lumbar support.

Power Lumbar



If available, press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or decrease lumbar support. Release the control when the seatback reaches the desired level of lumbar support.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ WARNING

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the safety belts cannot do their job when reclined like this.

The shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash, the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the safety belt properly.

Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

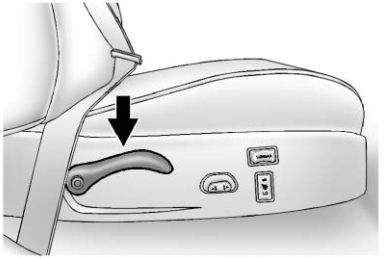
Manual Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ WARNING

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ WARNING

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.



To recline a manual seatback:

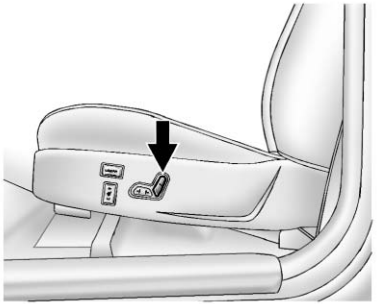
1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Reclining Seatbacks

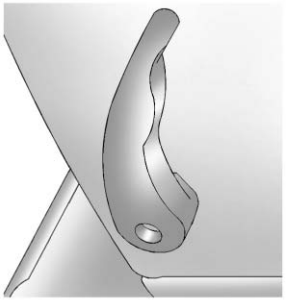


To recline a power seatback, if available:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

Seatback Latches

The vehicle may have front seatbacks that fold forward for easy access to the rear seats or the storage area behind the seats.



To fold the seatback forward, push the lever on the side of the seat rearward and pull the seatback forward.

⚠ WARNING

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position, push the seatback all the way back until it latches.

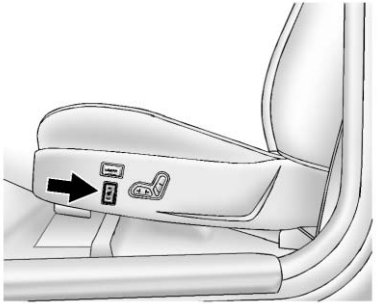
If the seatback was reclined before being folded forward, it will return to the reclined position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Heated Front Seats

⚠ WARNING

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.



If available, the switches are on the outboard sides of the front seats. To operate, the ignition must be on.

This feature will heat the cushion and back of the seats.

- Press the top of the switch for the high setting.
- Press the bottom of the switch for the low setting.
- Put the switch in the center position to turn this feature off.

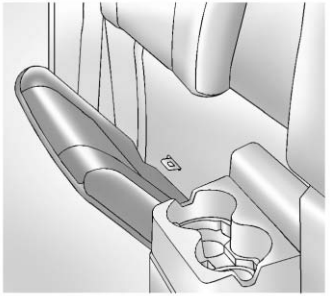
The heated seat will turn on at the last setting if the ignition is turned off and then back on.

The passenger safety belt must be fastened for the heated seat feature to work on the passenger seat.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Seats

Rear Seats (Extended Cab)

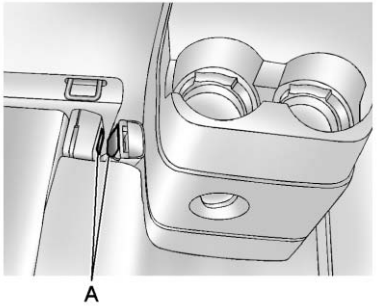


On extended cab models, there may be forward folding seats in the rear area.

To fold a rear seat cushion from the stored position to the sitting position, pull the front of the seat cushion down completely.

The rear seat storage compartments must be closed before folding the seat down. See *Rear Storage on page 4-2*.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**



A. Hook and Loop Fastener

To store the seat:

1. Secure the safety belt buckle to the inboard side of the seat with the hook and loop fastener (A), so that it does not move when not in use.
2. Push the entire seat up until it is flush with the trim panel.

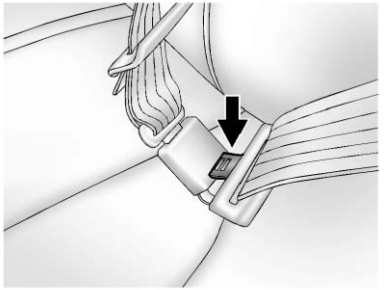
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Seats (Crew Cab)

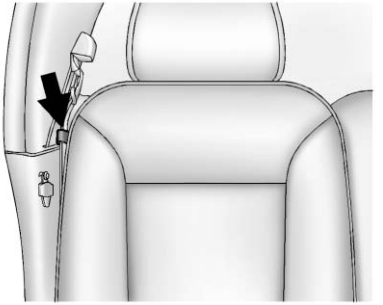
On crew cab models, the rear seatbacks can be folded forward.

Notice: **Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.**

To fold a rear seatback:



1. Disconnect the rear center safety belt latch from the mini-buckle by inserting the tip of the safety belt tongue into the slot on the buckle. Let the belt retract.



2. Pull the loop on the outboard side of the seatback forward until you hear a click.
3. Fold the seatback forward.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To return a seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the seatback up and push it rearward.

⚠ WARNING

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.

⚠ WARNING

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

3. Reconnect the center safety belt latch plate to the mini-buckle. Make sure the safety belt is not twisted.
4. Push and pull on the latch plate to be sure it is secure.

When the seatback is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Belts

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, the injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle harder or be ejected from the vehicle. You and your passenger(s) can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

⚠ WARNING

People riding on the tailgate (if equipped) can easily lose their balance and fall even when the vehicle is operated at low speeds. Falling from a moving vehicle may result in serious injuries or death.

⚠ WARNING

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in the vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 5-9* for additional information.

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing safety belts. Here is why:

You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a serious one.

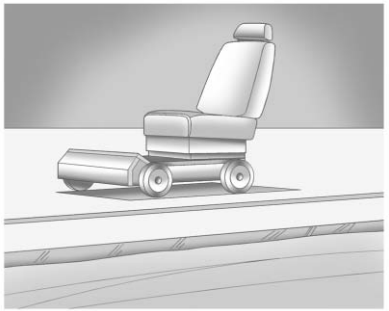
A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without safety belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

After more than 40 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter ... a lot!

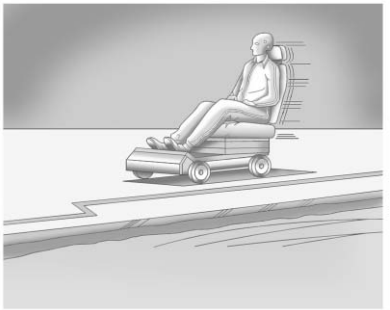
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Why Safety Belts Work

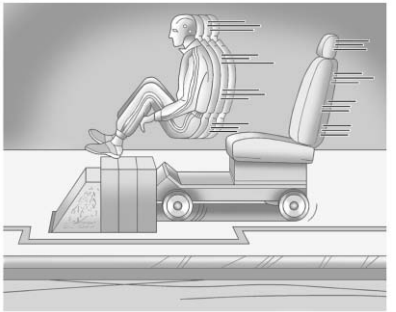
When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.



Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.

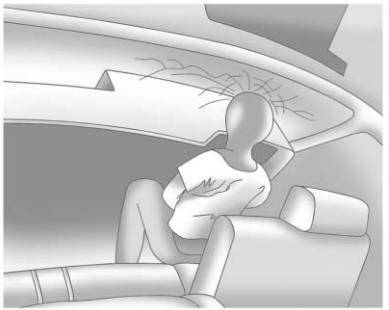


Put someone on it.

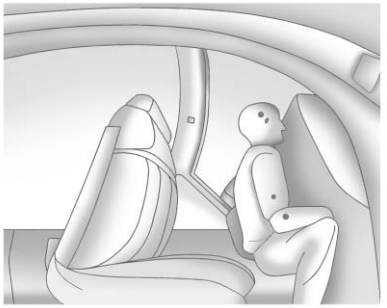


Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider does not stop.

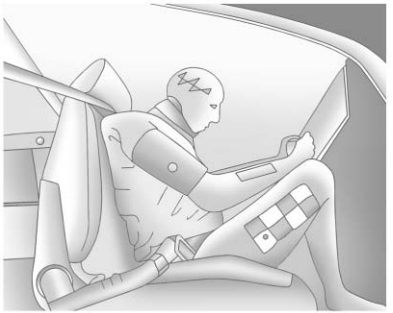
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...



or the instrument panel...



or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted. And you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

Q: If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

A: You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in a crash — even one that is not your fault — you and your passenger(s) can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 40 km (25 miles) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 65 km/h (40 mph).

Safety belts are for everyone.

How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

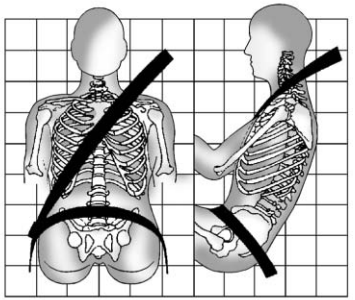
Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 3-41* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-43*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Occupants who are not buckled up can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

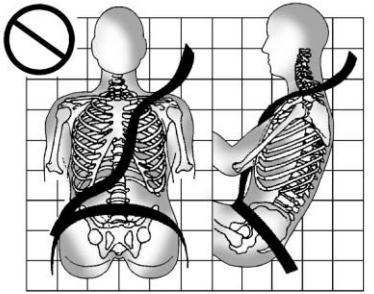
First, before you or your passenger(s) wear a safety belt, there is important information you should know.



Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you. The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

Q: What is wrong with this?



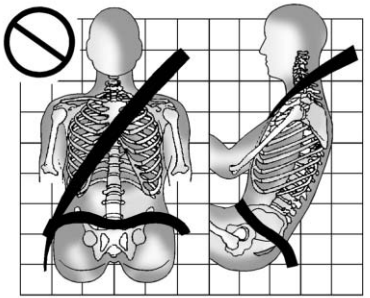
A: The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give as much protection this way.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously hurt if the shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit snugly against your body.

Q: What is wrong with this?



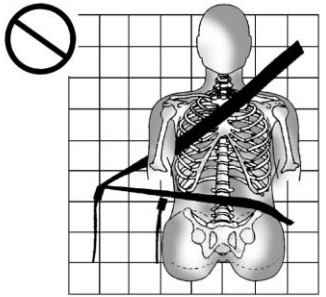
A: The lap belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously hurt if the lap belt is too loose. In a crash, you could slide under the lap belt and apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The lap belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What is wrong with this?

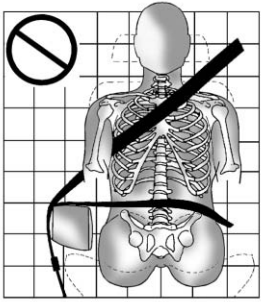


A: The belt is buckled in the wrong buckle.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured if the belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not on the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle the belt into the buckle nearest you.

Q: What is wrong with this?



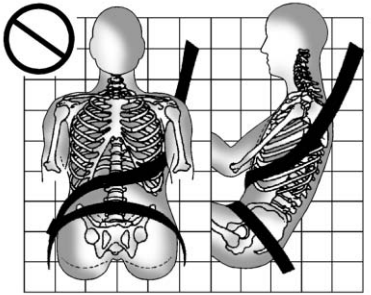
A: The belt is over an armrest.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured if the belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied on the abdomen, not on the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries. Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

Q: What is wrong with this?



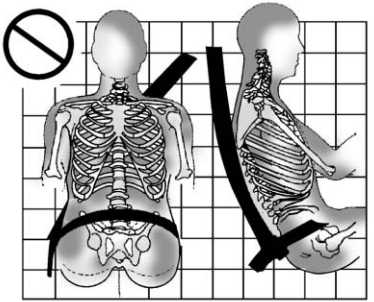
A: The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What is wrong with this?

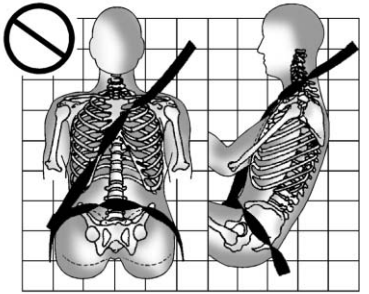


A: The belt is behind the body.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, you would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. Your body could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. You might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Q: What is wrong with this?



A: The belt is twisted across the body.

⚠ WARNING

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer to fix it.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt except for the center front passenger position, if equipped, which has a lap belt. See *Lap Belt on page 3-26* for more information.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.
2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

If you ever pull the shoulder portion of a passenger belt out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

Engaging the child restraint locking feature in the right front seating position may affect the passenger sensing system, if equipped. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-34* for more information.

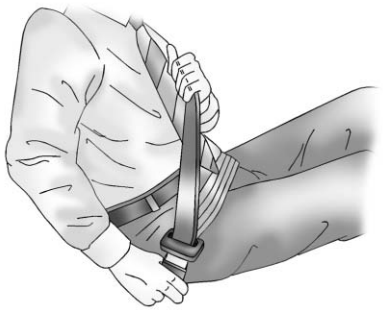
3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 3-26*.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

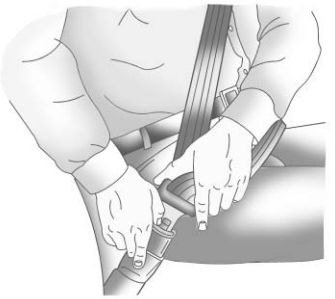
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster” later in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.



To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position. Slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing when the safety belt is not in use. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the guide loop on the side wall.

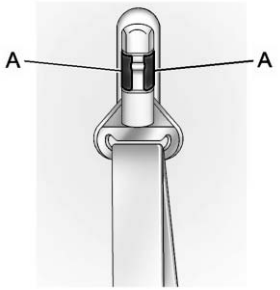
Before a door is closed, be sure the belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the belt and the vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and right front passenger seating position.

Adjust the height so the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash. See *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly on page 3-15*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



To move it up or down, squeeze the release buttons (A) together and move the height adjuster to the desired position.

After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it down without squeezing the release buttons to make sure it has locked into position.

Safety Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal or near frontal crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met.

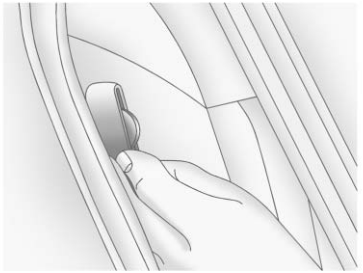
Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, they will need to be replaced, and probably other new parts for the vehicle's safety belt system. See *Replacing Safety Belt System Parts After a Crash on page 3-27*.

Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

This vehicle may have rear shoulder belt comfort guides for the rear outside positions. If not, they are available through your dealer.

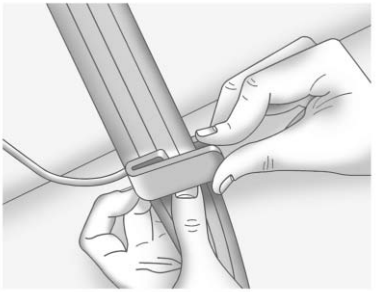
Rear shoulder belt comfort guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed and properly adjusted, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

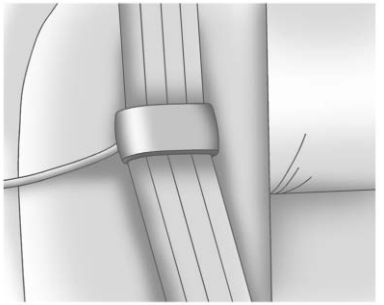


Here is how to install a comfort guide to the shoulder belt:

1. Slide the guide off of its storage clip located between the interior body and the seatback.



2. Place the guide over the belt and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

⚠ WARNING

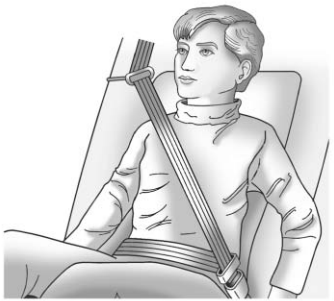
A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder

(Continued)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING (Continued)

and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.



4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that the safety belt can be removed from the guide. Slide the guide back on its storage clip located between the interior body and the seatback.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.

A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

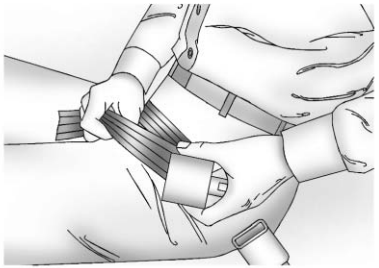
The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Lap Belt

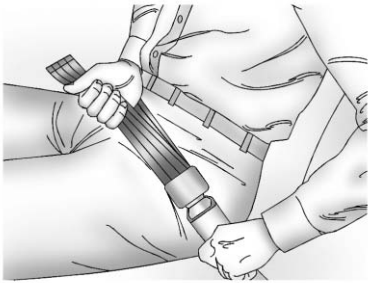
This section is only for the lap belt. To learn how to wear a lap-shoulder belt, see *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-21*.

The vehicle may have a center seating position. When you sit in the center front seating position, you have a lap safety belt, which has no retractor.



To make the belt longer, tilt the latch plate and pull it along the belt.

Buckle, position, and release it the same way as the lap part of a lap-shoulder belt.



To make the belt shorter, pull its free end as shown until the belt is snug.

If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 3-26*.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Safety System Check

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are working properly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 5-9* for more information.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Safety Belt Care on page 3-27*.

Safety Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ WARNING

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Replacing Safety Belt System Parts After a Crash

⚠ WARNING

A crash can damage the safety belt system in the vehicle. A damaged safety belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the safety belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of safety belts may not be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the right front passenger.

Your vehicle may also have the following airbags:

- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the right front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the right front passenger.

All of the airbags in your vehicle will have the word AIRBAG embossed in the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the middle part of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the right front passenger.

With roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear along the headliner or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ WARNING

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, but do not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to deploy in every crash. In some

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

crashes safety belts are your only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-31*.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ WARNING

Airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily

(Continued)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING (Continued)

close to the airbag, as you would be if you were sitting on the edge of your seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with roof-rail airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 3-41* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-43*.

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10* for more information.

Where Are the Airbags?

The driver's airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The right front passenger's airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.

Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

If your vehicle has roof-rail airbags for the driver, right front passenger, and second row outboard passengers, they are in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ WARNING

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries mainly to the driver's or right front passenger's head and chest. However, they are only designed to inflate if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants.

Whether your frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.
- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object that does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

Thresholds can also vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

Your vehicle has seat position sensors which enables the sensing system to monitor the position of the driver's seat and the right front passenger's seat. Seat position sensors provide information that is used to determine if the airbags should deploy at a reduced level or at full deployment.

In addition, your vehicle has dual-stage frontal airbags. Dual-stage airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity. Your vehicle has electronic frontal sensors, which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate frontal impact and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, dual-stage airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your vehicle may or may not have roof-rail airbags. See *Airbag System on page 3-28*. Roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. Roof-rail airbags will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed threshold level. The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design.

Roof-rail airbags are not intended to inflate in frontal impacts, near-frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts. Both roof-rail airbags will deploy when either side of the vehicle is struck.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down. For roof-rail airbags, deployment is determined by the location and severity of the side impact.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover and deploy. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

Frontal airbag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For vehicles with seat-mounted side impact airbags, there are airbags modules in the side of the front seatbacks closest to the door. For vehicles with roof-rail airbags, there are airbag modules in the ceiling of the vehicle, near the side windows that have occupant seating positions.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Frontal airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. Roof-rail airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-31* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize the airbags inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they deploy. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-32*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors (if equipped with power door locks), turn the interior lamps on, flash the hazard warning flashers, turn off the radio, and shut off the fuel system after the airbag inflates. You can lock the doors again by using the door lock. The interior lamps and hazard warning flashers will deactivate after approximately 15 minutes.

⚠ WARNING

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation.

DEALER E-PROCESS

Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- Your vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy on page 13-16* and *Event Data Recorders on page 13-16*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag system. Improper service can mean that the airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

If the vehicle has one of the passenger airbag status indicators pictured in the following illustrations, then the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator, if equipped, is visible on the instrument panel when the vehicle is started.

In addition, if the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position, the label on the vehicle's sun visors refer to “ADVANCED AIRBAGS”.

United States

Canada and Mexico

The words ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, will be visible during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or OFF, or the symbol for on or off will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-11*.

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

conditions. The driver airbag is not affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the right front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

We recommend that children be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

We recommend that rear-facing child restraints not be transported in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If your vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a rear-facing child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger airbag if:

- The right front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a child restraint.
- The system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat.
- A right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- The right front passenger seat is occupied by a smaller person, such as a child who has outgrown child restraints.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-11*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on (may inflate) the right front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger seat. When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is active.

For some children who have outgrown child restraints and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10* for more information, including important safety information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) on page 3-60* or *Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) on page 3-62* or *Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) on page 3-62*.
5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints on page 3-2*.
6. Restart the vehicle.

   If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle and check with your dealer.

   If no rear seat is available, do not install a child restraint in this vehicle and check with your dealer.

If the Off Indicator is Lit for an Adult-Size Occupant

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens, use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the right front passenger frontal airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Safety Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

If the shoulder portion of the belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature will be engaged. This may unintentionally cause the passenger sensing system to turn the airbag off for some adult size occupants. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-39* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

⚠ WARNING

Stowing of articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 13-13*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

For up to 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Q: Is there anything I might add to or change about the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?

A: Yes. If you add things that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, roof-rail airbag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, front sensors, or airbag wiring can affect the operation of the airbag system.

In addition, the vehicle may have a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery or trim, or with GM covers, upholstery or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-34*.

If you have any questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-1* or *Customer Satisfaction Procedure (Mexico) on page 13-3*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my airbag system?

A: If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-1* or *Customer Satisfaction Procedure (Mexico) on page 13-3*.

In addition, your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module and airbag wiring.

Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10* for more information.

Notice: **If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag covers, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-32*. See your dealer for service.**

Replacing Airbag System Parts After a Crash

⚠ WARNING

A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle. A damaged airbag system may not work properly and

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

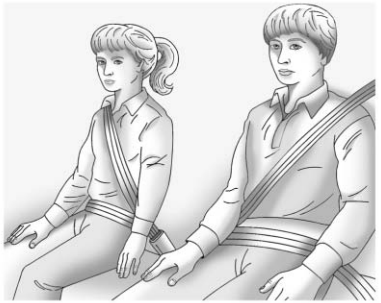
If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle safety belts.

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide. See “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-21* for more information. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Also see “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-21*.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Never allow two children to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen.

(Continued)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING (Continued)

That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.

⚠ WARNING

Never do this.

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

⚠ WARNING

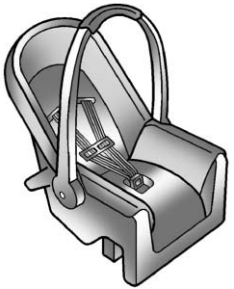
To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. This is because an infant's neck is not fully developed and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing child restraint settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

⚠ WARNING

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Restraint Systems



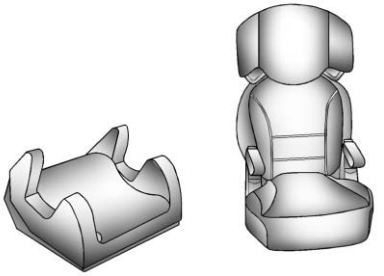
(A) Rear-Facing Infant Seat

A rear-facing infant seat (A) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.

(B) Forward-Facing Child Seat

A forward-facing child seat (B) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



(C) Booster Seats

A booster seat (C) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system.
A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ WARNING

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49* for more information. Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

In some areas of the United States and Canada, Certified Child Passenger Safety Technicians (CPSTs) are available to inspect and demonstrate how to correctly use and install child restraints. In the U.S., refer to the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) website to locate the nearest child safety seat inspection station. For CPST availability in Canada, check with Transport Canada or the Provincial Ministry of Transportation office.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

⚠ WARNING

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

We recommend that children and child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

The vehicle may have a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions.

Even if the passenger sensing system, if equipped, has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-34* for additional information.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the frontal airbags if they inflate. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in the center front seat position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If your vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, we recommend that rear-facing child restraints not be transported in your vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Always make sure the child restraint is properly secured.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent safety belt assemblies or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the safety belt.

Wherever you install a child restraint, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

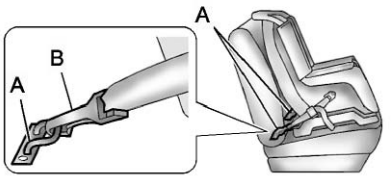
Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

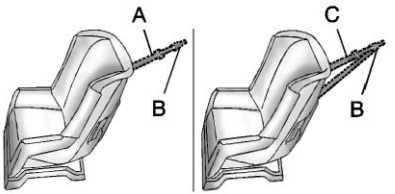
Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

Top Tether Anchor



A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

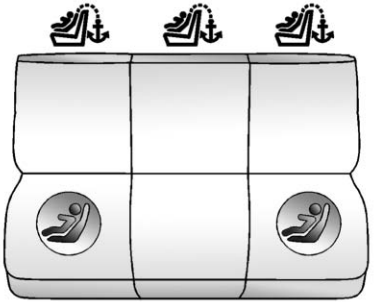
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints that have a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

If the child restraint does not have a top tether, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.

Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



Crew Cab — Rear Seat

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

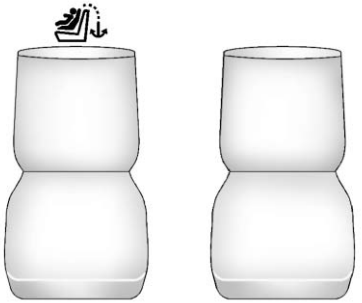
(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

Extended Cab — Rear Seat

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Front Seat — Regular and Extended Cab without Rear Seats

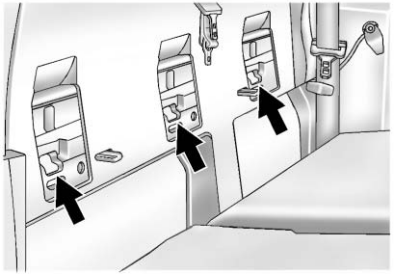
(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

For crew cab models, there are exposed metal lower anchors for each rear outboard seating position, located where the seatback meets the back of the seat cushion.

For extended cab models with rear seats, there are exposed metal lower anchors for each rear seating position, attached to the back wall, near the seat cushion.

To assist you in locating the lower anchors, place your hand in a palm-up position and reach up between the seat cushion and the seatback.

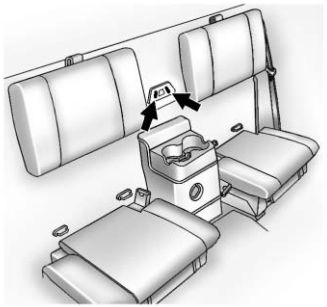
To assist you in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is located on the cover.



Crew Cab

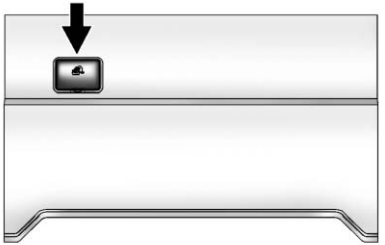
The top tether anchors in a crew cab model are located on the back wall behind each rear seating position. Be sure to use an anchor located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



Extended Cab — Rear Seat

The top tether anchors in an extended cab model are located on the center of the back wall behind a removable cover for the rear seating positions. Be sure to use an anchor located nearest to the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.



Regular and Extended Cab without Rear Seats

For regular and extended cab models without rear seats, there is a top tether anchor located behind a removable cover on the back wall behind the right front passenger seat. You may have to pull the seatback forward to access the anchor.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-47* for additional information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ WARNING

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a LATCH-type child restraint properly using the anchors, or use the vehicle safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ WARNING

Do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

⚠ WARNING

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

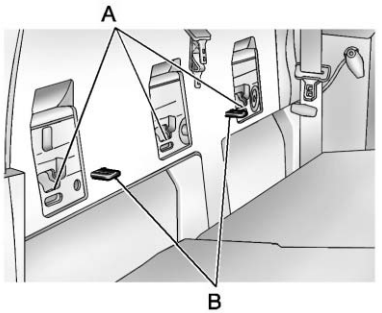
children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if the vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

Notice: **Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's safety belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled safety belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.**

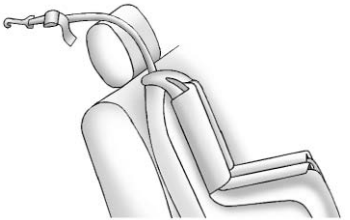
Do not fold the empty rear seat with a safety belt buckled. This could damage the safety belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the safety belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

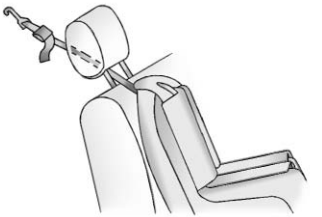
Crew Cab — Rear Seat



1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer's instructions recommends that the top tether be attached, attach the top tether to the top tether anchor (A). Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Pull the seatback forward to access the top tether anchors (A). See *Rear Seats (Extended Cab) on page 3-10* or *Rear Seats (Crew Cab) on page 3-10*.
   2.2. Route the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:

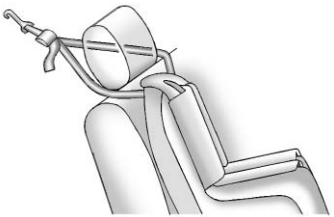


If the position you are using has a fixed headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the head restraint.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



If the position you are using has a fixed or adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the headrest or head restraint.

2.3. Attach the top tether to the anchor (A). Make sure that you secure the top tether to the top tether anchor and not to the seatback latch (B).

2.4. Push rearward on the seatback until it locks into its upright position. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is secured properly.

3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.

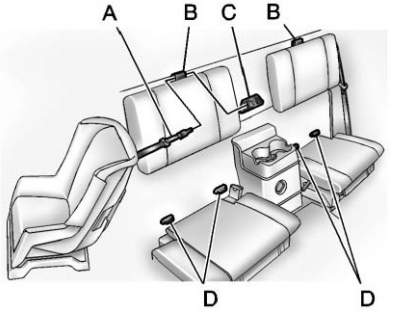
   3.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.

   3.2. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.

4. Tighten the top tether.

5. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move it side-to-side and back-and-forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement, for proper installation.

Extended Cab — Rear Seat



1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

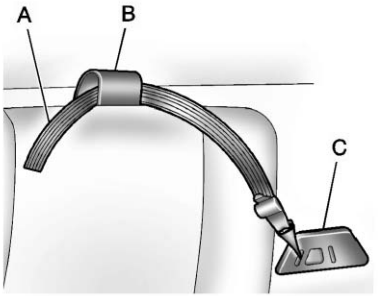
lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.

1.1. Find the lower anchors (D) for the desired seating position.

1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

1.3. Attach the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors (D) in the vehicle. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor (C). Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:



2.1. Pull on the finger access tab to remove the cover to access the top tether anchors (C).

2.2. Route the top tether (A) through the loop (B) at the top of the seatback to attach the top tether to the nearest top tether anchor (C).

3. Tighten the lower anchor attachments and the top tether. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

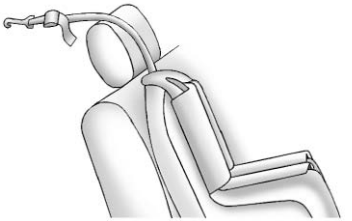
4. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move it side-to-side and back-and-forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement, for proper installation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front Seat — Regular/ Extended Cab without Rear Seats

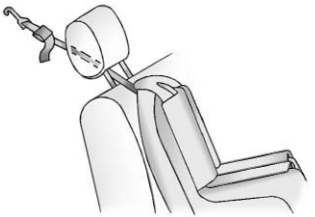
The vehicle has a right front passenger airbag and may also have a passenger sensing system. If the vehicle has a passenger sensing system it is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag when an infant in a rear-facing infant seat or a small child in a forward-facing child restraint or booster seat is detected. See *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) on page 3-60* or *Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) on page 3-62* or *Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) on page 3-62* and *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-34* for important safety information and additional information on installing a child restraint in the right front seat position.

1. See *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position) on page 3-60* or *Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position) on page 3-62* or *Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position) on page 3-62* for instructions on installing the child restraint using the safety belts.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer's instructions recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Pull the seatback forward to access the top tether anchor. See *Seatback Latches on page 3-7*.
   2.2. Pull on the finger access tab to remove the cover to access the top tether anchor.
   2.3. Route the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:

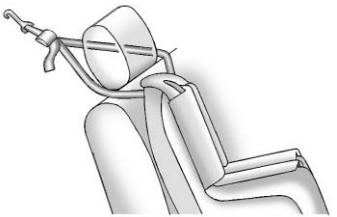


If the position you are using has a fixed headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the headrest or head restraint.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.



If the position you are using has a fixed or adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the headrest or head restraint.

3. Attach and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions.
4. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move it side-to-side and back-and-forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement, for proper installation.

Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash

⚠ WARNING

A crash can damage the LATCH system in the vehicle. A damaged LATCH system may not properly secure the child restraint, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the LATCH system is working properly after a crash, see your dealer to have the system inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, new LATCH system parts may be needed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the LATCH system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat Position)

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If your child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49* for how to install your child restraint using LATCH. If you secure a child restraint using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

If your child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

If you need to install more than one child restraint in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-47*.

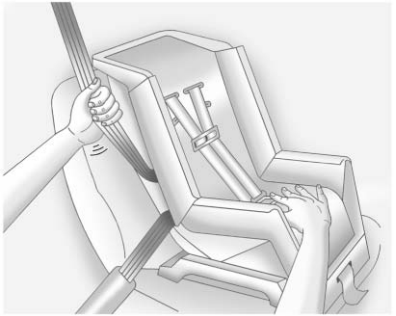
1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.
5. If your child restraint has a top tether, attach the top tether to the top tether anchor. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49*.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 4 and 6.
7. Tighten the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49*.
8. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side-to-side and back-and-forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Securing Child Restraints (Center Front Seat Position)

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the frontal airbags if they inflate. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in the center front seat position.

Securing Child Restraints (Right Front Seat Position)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-47*.

In addition, the vehicle may have a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-34* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-11* for more information on this, including important safety information.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

The vehicle may have a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions.

Even if the passenger sensing system, if equipped, has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is

(Continued)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING (Continued)

fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-34* for additional information.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a child restraint should not be installed in your vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

If your child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49* for how and where to install your child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49* for top tether anchor locations.

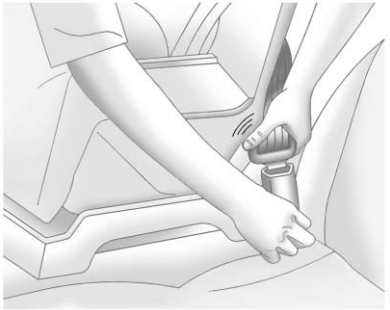
Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

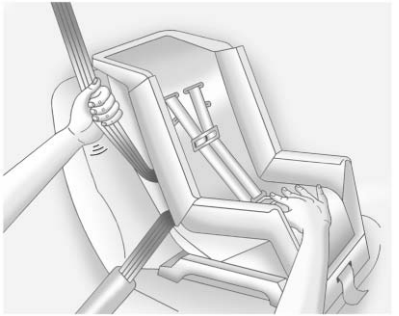
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

5. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.
6. If the vehicle does not have a rear seat and the child restraint manufacturer recommends using a top tether anchor, attach the top tether to the top tether anchor. Refer to the instructions that came with the child restraint and to *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49*.



7. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 7.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

8. Tighten the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 3-49*.
9. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

If the vehicle is equipped with the passenger sensing system, and when the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-11*.

If a child restraint has been installed and on indicator is lit, see “If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint” under *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-34* for more information.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

✍ NOTES

Information Provided by
DEALER E-PROCESS

Storage

Storage Compartments

Glove Box 4-1
Cupholders 4-1
Rear Storage 4-2
Center Console Storage 4-3

Storage Compartments

Glove Box

Lift up on the glove box lever to open it.

Cupholders

This vehicle may have two cupholders located on the lower part of the front doors as well as two cupholders located at the front end of the console. Vehicles with bench seats may have cupholders attached to the front of the center seat.

For vehicles that are an extended cab or crew cab model, the vehicle also has two rear cupholders. On crew cab models, the cupholders are located at the front end of the rear center seat cushion. The cupholder can be removed for cleaning by pressing the tab below the cupholder and sliding the cupholder forward.

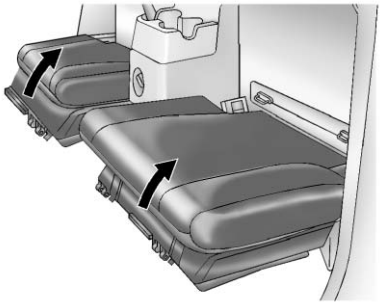
On extended cab models, the rear seat cupholders are located on top of the rear center console.

Vehicles with ashtrays will use one of the cupholders.

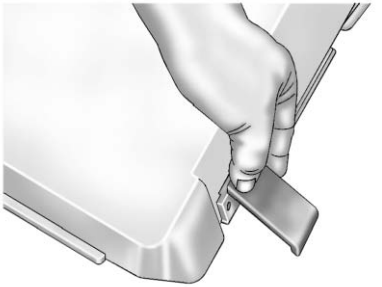
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Storage

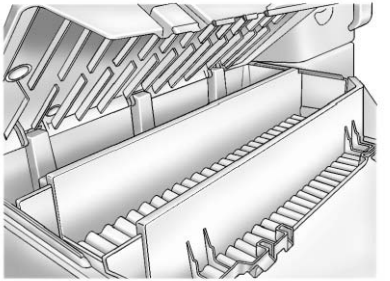
Extended cab models might have storage compartments under the rear seats.



To access the storage compartments, lift the cushion on the bottom of the rear seats. This exposes the storage boxes under the seat.



To open a storage box, unhook the bottom and lift the two latches on each side of the storage box.



Lift the lid from the center area to access the storage box.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Center Console Storage

For vehicles with bench seats, there may be a center armrest storage area. Lift up on the upper tab located at the front of the armrest to release the latch to open.

For vehicles with bucket seats or uplevel packages, the vehicle may have a two-tiered center armrest storage area. Lift up on the upper or lower tab at the front of the armrest to open the upper or lower storage area.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

✍ NOTES

Information Provided by
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment ... 5-2
Horn ... 5-2
Windshield Wiper/Washer ... 5-2
Compass ... 5-3
Clock ... 5-4
Power Outlets ... 5-5
Cigarette Lighter ... 5-5
Ashtrays ... 5-6

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators ... 5-6
Chime Level Adjustment ... 5-6
Instrument Cluster ... 5-7
Speedometer ... 5-8
Odometer ... 5-8
Trip Odometer ... 5-8
Tachometer ... 5-8
Fuel Gauge ... 5-8
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge ... 5-9
Safety Belt Reminders ... 5-9
Airbag Readiness Light ... 5-10
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator ... 5-11
Charging System Light ... 5-12
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ... 5-12
Brake System Warning Light ... 5-15
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light ... 5-16
Up-Shift Light ... 5-16
Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light ... 5-17
Tire Pressure Light ... 5-17
Engine Oil Pressure Light ... 5-18
Security Light ... 5-18
High-Beam On Light ... 5-19
Cruise Control Light ... 5-19

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC) ... 5-19

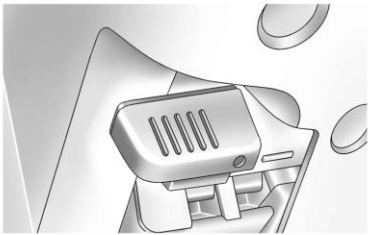
Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages ... 5-22
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages ... 5-23
Brake System Messages ... 5-23
Door Ajar Messages ... 5-24
Engine Cooling System Messages ... 5-24
Engine Oil Messages ... 5-24
Engine Power Messages ... 5-24
Fuel System Messages ... 5-25
Lamp Messages ... 5-25
Ride Control System Messages ... 5-25
Service Vehicle Messages ... 5-26
Tire Messages ... 5-26
Transmission Messages ... 5-26

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment



The steering wheel adjustment lever is located on the left side of the steering wheel.

To adjust:

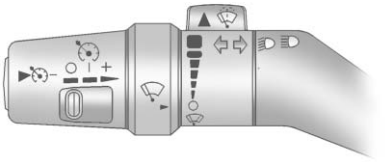
1. Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever toward you.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Release the lever to lock the wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Horn

To sound the horn, press the horn symbol on the steering wheel pad.

Windshield Wiper/Washer



The windshield wiper controls are located on the turn signal/lane change lever. They are controlled by turning the band with this symbol.

The windshield wipers work in all ignition positions, except LOCK/OFF. This includes the Retained Access Power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-30*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Move the band to one of the following positions:

(Mist): Use for a single wipe, move the band to and then release it. For several wipes, hold the band on longer.

(Adjustable Interval Wipes): For adjustable interval wipes, turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

(Low Speed): Use for slow wipes. Turn the band to the first solid position past the delay settings.

(High Speed): Use for fast wipes. Turn the band to the second solid position past the delay settings.

(Off): Use to turn the wipers off.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades before using them. If frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced.

Windshield Washer

⚠ WARNING

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

(Washer Fluid): Push the paddle on top of the multifunction lever to spray washer fluid on the windshield. The wipers will clear the window and then either stop or return to your preset speed.

Compass

Compass Operation

Press or depending on the mirror, press once to turn the display on or off.

Compass Calibration

The compass may need calibration if:

- CAL is displayed while driving in the vehicle.
- After approximately five seconds, the display does not show a compass heading, N for North, for example, there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Interference can be caused by a magnetic antenna mount, magnetic note pad holder, or a similar magnetic item.
- The compass does not display the correct heading and the compass zone variance is set correctly.

To calibrate, CAL must be displayed in the mirror compass windows. If CAL is not displayed, press and hold / for several seconds or until CAL is displayed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The compass can be calibrated by driving the vehicle in circles at 8 km/h (5 mph) or less until the display reads a direction.

Compass Variance

The mirror is set to zone eight. If you do not live in zone eight or drive out of the area, the compass variance needs to be changed to the appropriate zone.

To adjust for compass variance:

1. Find the current location and variance zone number on the following zone map.

2. Press and hold ⏻ / ⏻ until Z and/or a zone number displays.
3. Press ⏻ / ⏻ repeatedly until the new zone number displays. After you stop pressing the button, the display shows a compass direction within a few seconds.

Clock

AM-FM Radio

Press and hold HR until the correct hour displays. Press and hold MIN until the correct minute displays. There is an initial two-second delay before the clock goes into time-set mode. To display the time with the ignition off, press RCL, HR, or MIN.

Radio with CD (MP3/WMA)

Press and hold the HR button until the correct hour displays. Press and hold the MIN button until the correct minute displays. The time can be set with the ignition on or off.

To synchronize the time with an FM station broadcasting Radio Data System (RDS) information, press and hold the HR and MIN buttons at the same time until RDS TIME displays. To accept this time, press and hold the HR and MIN buttons, at the same time, for another two seconds. If the time is not available from the station, NO UPDAT (update) displays.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

RDS time is broadcast once a minute. After tuning to an RDS broadcast station, it could take a few minutes for the time to update.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle may have an accessory power outlet located below the climate control system and on the rear of the center console. Remove the cover to access and replace when not in use.

⚠ WARNING

Power is always supplied to the outlets. Do not leave electrical equipment plugged in when the vehicle is not in use because the vehicle could catch fire and cause injury or death.

Notice: **Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 ampere rating.**

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle and adapter fuses. If a problem is experienced, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment on page 9-67*.

Notice: **Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as cell phone charge cords.**

Cigarette Lighter

To use the lighter, press it in all the way, and let go. When it is ready, it will pop back out by itself.

Notice: **Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating does not let the lighter back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating can occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Ashtrays

The vehicle may have a removable ashtray and cigarette lighter.

The ashtray is located in the center console area. The ashtray can be removed for cleaning. When the ashtray is removed, this area can also be used as a cupholder.

Notice: **If papers, pins, or other flammable items are put in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage the vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.**

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Often gauges and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

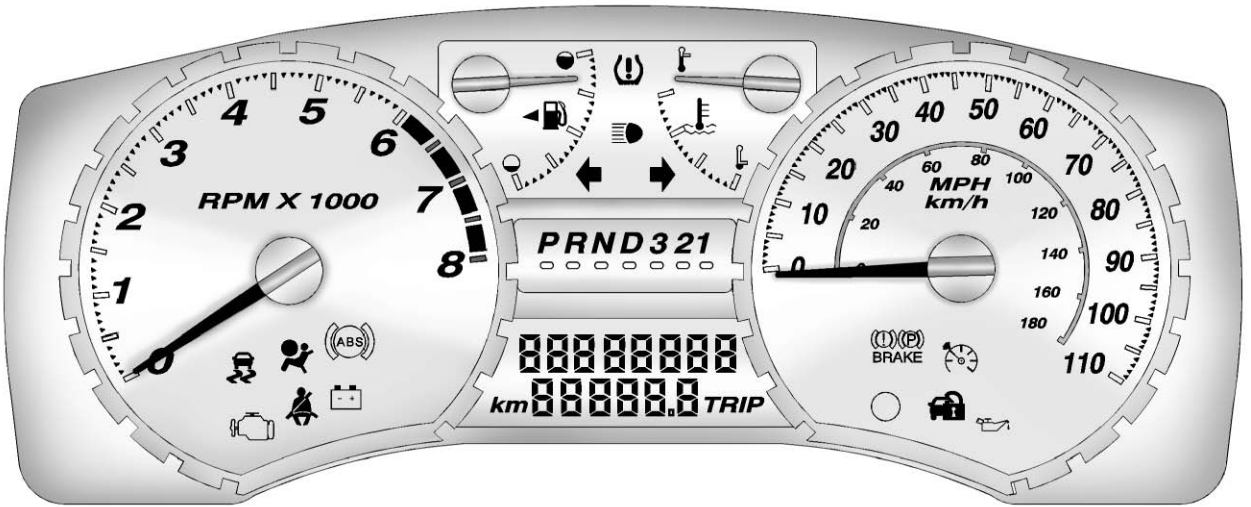
When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Chime Level Adjustment

The radio is used to adjust the vehicle's chime level. To change the volume level of the chime, press and hold pushbutton 6 with the ignition on and the radio power off. The volume level will change from the normal level to loud, and LOUD will appear on the radio display. To change back to the default or normal setting, press and hold pushbutton 6 again. The volume level will change from the loud level to normal, and NORMAL will appear on the radio display. Each time the chime volume is changed, three chimes will sound to indicate the new volume selected. Removing the radio and not replacing it with a factory radio or chime module will disable vehicle chimes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Cluster



English Automatic Transmission 2.9L Shown, Metric, Manual Transmission, 3.7L and 5.3L Similar

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either miles (used in the United States) or kilometers (used in Canada).

The odometer mileage can be checked without the vehicle running by pressing the trip information stem. See “Odometer” under *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-19* for more information.

If the cluster is replaced the new one will automatically detect and update the vehicle's accumulated mileage.

Trip Odometer

The vehicle has a trip odometer that indicates how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last set to zero.

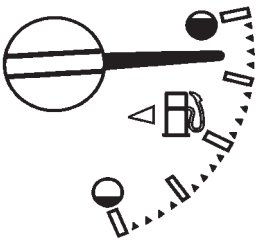
See “Trip Odometer” under *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-19* for more information.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Notice: **If the engine is operated with the tachometer in the shaded warning area, the vehicle could be damaged, and the damages would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not operate the engine with the tachometer in the shaded warning area.**

Fuel Gauge



When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge shows how much fuel the vehicle has remaining in the fuel tank.

An arrow on the fuel gauge indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

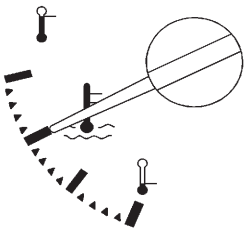
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Here are four things that some owners ask about. None of these indicate a problem with the vehicle's fuel gauge:

- At the gas station, the gas pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gauge indicated. For example, the gauge may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gauge moves a little while turning a corner or speeding up.
- The gauge does not go back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

When the fuel in the fuel tank is low, a LOW FUEL message will display on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Fuel System Messages on page 5-25* for more information.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.

If the gauge pointer is near the top of the gauge, the engine is too hot. It means that the engine coolant has overheated. If the vehicle has been operating under normal driving conditions, pull the vehicle off the road, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

See *Engine Overheating on page 10-23* for more information.

Safety Belt Reminders

Driver Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds to remind a driver to fasten the safety belt, unless the driver safety belt is already buckled.

The safety belt light comes on and stays on for several seconds, then flashes for several more.

This chime and light are repeated if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion. If the driver safety belt is already buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

For vehicles equipped with the passenger safety belt reminder light, several seconds after the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds to remind the front passenger to buckle their safety belt. The passenger safety belt light, located on the instrument panel, comes on and stays on for several seconds and then flashes for several more.

This chime and light are repeated if the passenger remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

If the passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the safety belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

The system checks the airbag's electrical system for possible malfunctions. If the light stays on it indicates there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensor, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 3-28*.

The airbag readiness light flashes for a few seconds when the engine is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, an airbag Driver Information Center (DIC) message can also come on. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-22* for more information.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

If the vehicle has one of the passenger airbag status indicators pictured in the following illustrations, then the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator is on the instrument panel. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-34* for important safety information.

In addition, if the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position, the label on the vehicle's sun visors refer to “ADVANCED AIRBAGS”.

United States

Canada and Mexico

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger frontal airbag.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate).

If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service.

⚠ WARNING

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others,

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10* for more information, including important safety information.

Charging System Light

This light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to START, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

The light should go out once the engine starts. If it stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the charging system. A charging system message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) can also appear. See *Battery Voltage and Charging Messages on page 5-23* for more information. This light could indicate that there are problems with a generator drive belt, or that there is an electrical problem. Have it checked right away. If the vehicle must be driven a short distance with the light on, turn off accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems. It ensures that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

This light should come on when the ignition is on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on and stays on while the engine is running, this indicates that there is an OBD II problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system assists the service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Notice: **If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Notice: **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/ Maintenance test.**
See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-4*.

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park the vehicle. Turn the vehicle off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Light On Steady: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The following may correct an emissions system malfunction:

- Make sure the fuel cap is fully installed. See *Filling the Tank on page 9-54*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.
- Make sure the electrical system is not wet. The system could be wet if the vehicle was driven through a deep puddle of water. The condition is usually corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.
- Make sure to fuel the vehicle with quality fuel. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and can cause: stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

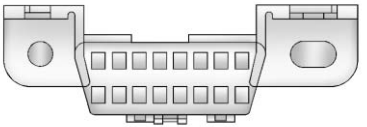
If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

See *Recommended Fuel on page 9-51*.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. The dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

Some state/provincial and local governments may have programs to inspect the on-vehicle emission control equipment. For the inspection, the emission system test equipment is connected to the vehicle's Data Link Connector (DLC).



The DLC is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. See your dealer if assistance is needed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The vehicle may not pass inspection if:

- The malfunction indicator lamp is on with the engine running, or if the light does not come on when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN while the engine is off.
- The critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. This can happen if the battery has recently been replaced or if the battery has run down. The diagnostic system evaluates critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If this has been done and the vehicle still does not pass the inspection, your dealer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working

If the warning light comes on, there could be a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.

English

Metric

This light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN. If it does not, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

When the ignition is on, the brake system warning light comes on when the parking brake is set. See *Parking Brake on page 9-44* for more information. The light stays on if the parking brake does not release fully. If it stays on after the parking brake is fully released, it means there is a brake problem.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the light comes on while driving, pull off the road and stop. The brake pedal might be harder to push, or it might go closer to the floor. It can take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-87*.

⚠ WARNING

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off. If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, the vehicle still has brakes, but not antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-15*.

See *Brake System Messages on page 5-23* for all brake related DIC messages.

Up-Shift Light

The vehicle may have an up-shift light.

When this light comes on, shift to the next higher gear if weather, road, and traffic conditions allow.

See *Manual Transmission on page 9-37* for more information.

Information Provided by DEALER E-PROCESS

Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light

The StabiliTrak and Traction Control System (TCS) indicator/warning light comes on briefly while starting the engine.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

The light flashes while the StabiliTrak system and TCS are working to assist the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

If the StabiliTrak system and TCS light comes on and stays on while driving and a TRACTION FAULT or SERVICE STAB SYS message displays on the DIC, the vehicle needs service.

The light also comes on steady when the StabiliTrak system and/or TCS are turned off. The DIC also displays a TRAC OFF and/or STAB SYS OFF message. If the TCS is off, wheel spin is not limited. If the StabiliTrak system is off, the system does not assist the driver with directional control of the vehicle. The light turns off when the TCS and StabiliTrak system are turned back on.

See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47*, *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-46* and *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-25* for more information.

Tire Pressure Light

For vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tire pressures and the TPMS.

When the Light is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires are significantly underinflated.

A tire pressure message can accompany the light. See *Tire Messages on page 5-26* for more information. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-52* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When the Light Flashes First and Then is On Steady

This indicates that there may be a problem with the TPMS. The light flashes for about a minute and stays on steady for the remainder of the ignition cycle. This sequence repeats with every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-55* for more information.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

⚠ WARNING

Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. The engine can become so hot that it catches fire. Someone could be burned. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.**

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and it might have some other system problem.

Security Light

For information regarding this light and the vehicle's security system, see *Anti-Theft Alarm System on page 2-9*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

High-Beam On Light

This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-2* for more information.

Cruise Control Light

The cruise control light comes on whenever the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 9-49* for more information.

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The Driver Information Center (DIC) displays information such as the trip odometer, personalization features, and warning messages. The DIC display is located on the instrument panel cluster.

Operation and Displays

The Driver Information Center (DIC) comes on when the ignition is on.

If a problem is detected, a warning message appears on the display. Pressing and releasing the trip odometer reset stem on the DIC acknowledges some current warnings or service messages. Some messages only clear after the required action has been taken.

The DIC has different menu items which can be accessed by pressing the trip odometer reset stem on the DIC. This includes trip information,

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

such as the odometer and trip odometer, engine oil life reset, and personalization features that are explained in the following information. The DIC trip odometer reset stem is located on the instrument panel cluster next to the DIC display.

Trip Information

Odometer

The odometer is automatically displayed on the DIC when you start the vehicle. The odometer shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven in either miles for the United States or kilometers for Canada.

Trip Odometer

Press and release the reset stem until TRIP appears on the DIC display. The trip odometer shows the current distance traveled since the last reset of the trip odometer in either miles for the United States or kilometers for Canada.

To reset the trip odometer, press and hold the reset stem until the display returns to zero.

Engine Oil Life System

With the engine off, turn the key to ON/RUN and then press the reset stem until OIL LIFE RESET appears — alternating between OIL LIFE and RESET — on the DIC display. The CHANGE OIL message alerts you to change the oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions. Always reset the OIL LIFE message after an oil change. To reset the message, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*.

In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* for more information.

Personalization Features

Language

This feature allows you to choose the language in which the DIC display shows information.

To set your choice for this feature:

1. With the engine off, turn the key to ON/RUN, but do not start the engine.
2. Close all doors so the DOORS message does not display in the DIC.
3. Momentarily press and release the reset stem until the current language is displayed: English (default), Spanish, or French.
4. To select a different language, press and hold the reset stem until the next language appears.
5. Repeat Step 4 until the desired language is displayed. Once the desired language is shown on the DIC display, the language is set.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

6. To exit the language selection, momentarily press and release the reset stem. All DIC messages will now display in the language selected.

Automatic Door Locks

This feature allows you to program the door locks to a preferred setting.

To set your choice for this feature:

1. With the engine off, turn the key to LOCK/OFF. Do not remove the key from the ignition.
2. Press and hold the power door lock button until the DIC display shows the current door lock mode.
3. To view the next available mode, press and hold the reset stem until the mode appears. Release the reset stem and press and hold again to view the next mode.
4. Once the desired mode is shown on the DIC display, briefly press the reset stem to set your choice. The DIC display then clears.

The following are the available modes:

Lock 1 (default): On vehicles with an automatic transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) and unlocks all of the doors when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

On vehicles with a manual transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle speed is greater than 24 km/h (15 mph) and unlocks all of the doors when the key is removed from the ignition.

Lock 2: On vehicles with an automatic transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) and unlocks the driver's door when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

On vehicles with a manual transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle speed is greater than 24 km/h (15 mph) and unlocks the driver's door when the key is removed from the ignition.

Lock 3: On vehicles with an automatic transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park). The doors will not automatically unlock.

On vehicles with a manual transmission, this mode locks all of the doors when the vehicle speed is greater than 24 km/h (15 mph). The doors will not automatically unlock.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Feedback

This feature allows you to program the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) feedback to a preferred setting.

To set your choice for this feature:

1. With the engine off, turn the key to LOCK/OFF. Do not remove the key from the ignition.
2. Press and hold the lock and unlock buttons on the RKE transmitter at the same time. Hold both buttons until the DIC display shows the current RKE feedback mode.
3. To view the next available mode, press and hold the reset stem until the mode appears. Release the reset stem and press and hold again to view the next mode.
4. Once the desired mode is shown on the DIC display, briefly press the reset stem to set your choice. The DIC display then clears.

The following are the available modes:

RFA 1 (default): This mode flashes the parking lamps when you press the lock or unlock buttons on the RKE transmitter.

RFA 2: This mode flashes the parking lamps and sounds the horn when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter. This mode also flashes the parking lamps when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

RFA 3: This mode flashes the parking lamps and sounds the horn when you press the lock or unlock buttons on the RKE transmitter.

RFA 4: This mode disables RKE feedback. There will be no feedback when you press the lock or unlock buttons on the RKE transmitter.

Vehicle Messages

Messages are displayed on the DIC to notify the driver that the status of the vehicle has changed and that some action may be needed by the driver to correct the condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another. The messages are displayed for several seconds each.

Some messages may not require immediate action, but you should press and release the trip odometer reset stem to acknowledge that you received the messages and to clear them from the display. Each message must be acknowledged individually.

Some messages cannot be cleared from the DIC display because they are more urgent. These messages require action before they can be cleared. You should take any messages that appear on the display seriously and remember that clearing the messages only makes the messages disappear, not correct the problem.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The following are the possible messages that can be displayed and some information about them.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

SERVICE CHARG (Charge) SYS (System)

This message displays if there is a problem with the battery charging system. Under certain conditions, the battery warning light may also turn on in the instrument panel cluster. See *Charging System Light on page 5-12*. The battery will not be charging at an optimal rate and the vehicle will lose the ability to enter the fuel economy mode. The vehicle is safe to drive, however have the electrical system checked by your dealer. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

Brake System Messages

ABS (Antilock Brake System) FAULT

This message displays if there is a problem with the Antilock Brake System (ABS). Check the ABS as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Braking on page 9-3* and *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-16* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

BRAKES

This message displays if there is a problem with the brakes. Check the brakes as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Braking on page 9-3* and *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-16* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

FLUID

This message displays if the brake fluid is low. Check the brake fluid as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Braking on page 9-3* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

PARK BRK (Brake)

This message displays when the parking brake is set. See *Parking Brake on page 9-44* and *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-16* for more information. The message clears from the display after the parking brake is released or by pressing and releasing the reset stem.

Door Ajar Messages

DOORS

This message displays when one or more of the doors is ajar. Check all the doors on your vehicle to make sure they are closed. The message clears from the display after all of the doors are closed.

Engine Cooling System Messages

AC (Air Conditioning) OFF

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too high and the air conditioning in your vehicle needs to be turned off. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-23* and *Climate Control Systems on page 8-1* for more information. This message displays along with the ENG HOT message.

ENG (Engine) HOT

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is hot. Check the engine coolant temperature gauge. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge on page 5-9*. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer as soon as possible if you suspect the engine is overheating. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-23* for more information.

Engine Oil Messages

CHANGE OIL

This message displays when the oil needs to be changed. Check the oil in your vehicle as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

OIL

This message displays when the oil pressure is low. See *Engine Oil Pressure Light on page 5-18* and *Engine Oil on page 10-9* for more information.

Engine Power Messages

REDUCED POWER

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

Fuel System Messages

FUEL CAP

This message displays if the vehicle's fuel cap is either off or loose. Pull over as soon as possible and check to see if the fuel cap is secure. You may also see the check engine light on the instrument panel cluster. If the check engine light does come on when the fuel cap was loose, it may take a few driving trips before the light turns off. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-12* for more information if the light still remains on. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

LOW FUEL

This message displays if the level of fuel in the vehicle is low. Also check the fuel gauge. See *Fuel Gauge on page 5-8* for more information. Refill the fuel tank as soon as possible.

Lamp Messages

TURN SIGNAL

This message displays when the turn signal is on for about 1.2 km (0.75 miles) of travel. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

Ride Control System Messages

SERVICE STAB (Stability) SYS (System)

This message displays if there is a problem with the StabiliTrak system. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47* for more information.

STAB (Stability) SYS (System) OFF

This message displays when the StabiliTrak system is turned off. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47* for more information.

TRAC (Traction) OFF

This message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) is turned off by pressing the StabiliTrak button. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47* for more information.

TRACTION FAULT

This message will display if there is a problem with the TCS. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47* for more information. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Service Vehicle Messages

SERV (Service) VEH (Vehicle)

This message displays if your vehicle needs service. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer as soon as possible.

Tire Messages

LOW TIRE

This message displays if a low tire pressure is detected in any of the vehicle's tires. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display. The message appears at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. See *Tires on page 10-46* and *Tire Pressure on page 10-52* for more information on tires and the correct inflation pressures.

SERV (Service) TPM (Tire Pressure Monitor)

This message displays if a part on the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) is not working properly. The tire pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 5-17*. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-55* for more information. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer.

Transmission Messages

SERV (Service) 4WD (Four-Wheel Drive)

This message displays when there is a problem with the transfer case control system. Check the transfer case on your vehicle and have it serviced by your dealer. See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 9-39* for more information about the transfer case. Press and release the reset stem to acknowledge the message and clear it from the display.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Lighting

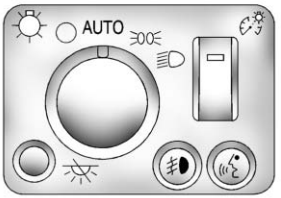
Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 6-2
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 6-2
Flash-to-Pass 6-2
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Automatic Headlamp System 6-3
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-4
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-4
Fog Lamps 6-5
Exterior Cargo Lamps 6-5

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 6-6
Dome Lamps 6-6

Lighting Features
Exit Lighting 6-7
Battery Load Management 6-7
Battery Power Protection 6-7

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls



The exterior lamp control is located on the instrument panel on the left side of the steering wheel.

(Exterior Lamps): Turn the knob, located to the right of this symbol, to choose one of the four exterior lamp positions.

(Off): Turns off all exterior lamps including the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

AUTO: Turns the headlamps on automatically at normal brightness, together with the following:

- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- Parking Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

See *Automatic Headlamp System on page 6-3* for more information.

(Parking Lamps): Turns on the parking lamps, together with the following:

- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

(Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps, together with the previously listed lamps and lights.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

If a door is open, a reminder chime sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are manually turned on and the key is out of the ignition. To turn off the chime, turn the headlamp switch to off and then back on. In the automatic mode, the headlamps turn off once the ignition is in LOCK/OFF.

For vehicles first sold in Canada, if the parking lamps are turned on manually, the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) will stay on.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

Headlamp High/Low Beam Changer: Push the turn signal/ multifunction lever away from you to turn the high beams on.

Pull the lever towards you to return to low beams.

This indicator light turns on in the instrument panel cluster when the high beam headlamps are on.

Flash-to-Pass

This feature lets you use the high-beam headlamps to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass. It works even if the headlamps are in the automatic position.

To use it, pull the turn signal lever toward you, then release it.

If the headlamps are in the automatic position or on low beam, the high-beam headlamps will turn on. They will stay on as long as the lever is held toward you. The high-beam indicator on the instrument panel cluster will come on. Release the lever to return to normal operation.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The DRL system will come on when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamps control is in AUTO.
- The transmission is not in P (Park) if you have an automatic transmission.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

When the DRL are on, only the parking lamps or reduced intensity low beam headlamps will be on. The taillamps, sidemarkers, and other lamps will not be on. The instrument panel will not be lit up either.

When it begins to get dark, the headlamps will automatically switch from DRL to the regular headlamps.

The regular headlamp system should be turned on when needed.

Automatic Headlamp System

When it is dark enough outside, the automatic headlamp system will turn on after the transmission has been shifted from P (Park) to D (Drive). The headlamps, taillamps, sidemarker, parking lamps, roof marker lamps, and the instrument panel lights turn on at normal brightness. The radio lights will become dimmer when the headlights are off compared to when the headlights are on.

The vehicle has a light sensor located on the top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor, or the system will be on whenever the ignition is on.

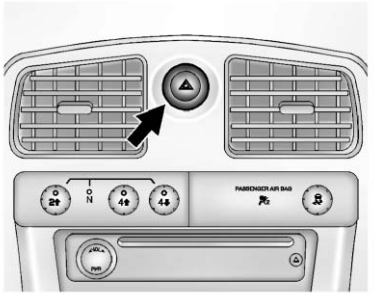
The system can turn on the headlamps when driving in a parking garage, through a tunnel or when there is overcast weather. This is normal.

There is a delay in the transition between the daytime and nighttime operation of the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) and the automatic headlamp system so that driving under bridges or bright overhead street lights does not affect the system. The DRL and automatic headlamp system will only be affected when the light sensor detects a change in lighting lasting longer than the delay.

If the vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system will come on immediately. Once the vehicle leaves the garage, it will take about 1 minute for the automatic headlamp system to change to DRL if it is light outside. During that delay, the instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-6*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Hazard Warning Flashers

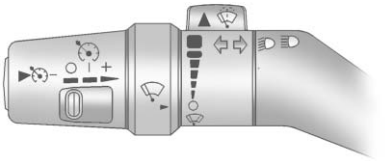


(Hazard Warning Flasher): Press this button located on the instrument panel, to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. This warns others that you are having trouble.

Press again to turn the flashers off.

The turn signals do not work while the hazard warning flashers are on.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is complete.

The lever returns to its starting position when it is released.

If after signaling a turn or a lane change the arrows flash rapidly or do not come on, a signal bulb may be burned out.

Have the bulbs replaced. If the bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. For bulb replacement, see *Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps on page 10-37*. For a blown fuse or circuit breaker, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 10-40*.

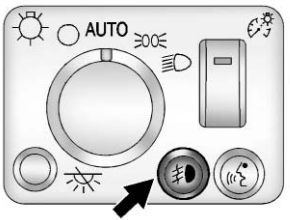
Turn Signal On Chime

If a turn signal is left on for more than 1.2 km (3/4 of a mile), a chime will sound at each flash of the turn signal and the message TURN SIGNAL will also appear in the DIC. To turn the chime and message off, move the turn signal lever to the off position.

See “TURN SIGNAL” under *Lamp Messages on page 5-25* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fog Lamps



The fog lamp button is located near the exterior lamps control.

: For vehicles with fog lamps, press to turn the fog lamps on or off. An indicator light will turn on in the button when the fog lamps are on.

The parking lamps or low-beam headlamps must be on for the fog lamps to work. The fog lamps will go off whenever the high-beam headlamps come on. When the high beams go off, the fog lamps come on again.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

Exterior Cargo Lamps

The cargo lamps (if equipped) can be used if more light is needed in the cargo area of the vehicle or in the top-box storage units.

This button is located on the driver side of the instrument panel near the exterior lamp control.

Press to turn the cargo lamps on and off.

The dome lamps must be on for the cargo lamps to come on. See *Dome Lamps on page 6-6*.

If the vehicle is equipped with Bluetooth®, turning the instrument panel illumination control thumbwheel all the way up will turn on the cargo lamps.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

(Instrument Panel Lights): Turn the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the instrument panel lights and the radio display. The instrument panel lights, cluster, and radio display do not dim to complete darkness. Turning the thumbwheel all the way up will turn on the dome lamps and may also turn on the cargo lamp, if the vehicle is equipped with Bluetooth.

The instrument panel light brightness control will only work if the headlamps or parking lamps are on. See *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

Dome Lamps

The dome lamps come on when any door is opened.

To manually turn on the dome lamps, turn the thumbwheel, located next to the exterior lamps control, all the way up. The cargo lamps may come on, if the vehicle is equipped with Bluetooth. In this position, the lamps remain on whether a door is opened or closed.

Reading Lamps

Press the lens on the lamps to turn each reading lamp on or off.

These lamps will not come on with the dome lamps.

Dome Lamp Override

The dome lamp override button is located below the exterior lamps control.

(Dome Lamp Override): Press this button in to make the dome lamps remain off when the doors are open. To return the lamps to automatic operation, press again and return it to the out position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Lighting Features

Exit Lighting

The interior lamps will come on when the key is removed from the ignition. The lamps will not come on if the dome override button is pressed in.

Battery Load Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM) that estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gauge or a voltage display on the Driver Information Center (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all of the power needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a DIC message might be displayed, such as BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE, BATTERY VOLTAGE LOW, or LOW BATTERY. If one of these messages displays, it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-19*.

Battery Power Protection

This feature shuts off the dome lamp if it is left on for more than 20 minutes when the ignition is in LOCK/OFF. This helps to prevent the battery from running down.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

✍ NOTES

Information Provided by
DEALER E-PROCESS

Infotainment System

Introduction
Infotainment 7-1
Theft-Deterrent Feature 7-2
Operation 7-3

Radio
AM-FM Radio 7-7
Satellite Radio 7-11
Radio Reception 7-13
Fixed Mast Antenna 7-14
Satellite Radio Antenna 7-14

Audio Players
CD Player 7-14

Phone
Bluetooth 7-20

Introduction

Infotainment

Determine which radio the vehicle has and read the following pages to become familiar with its features.

⚠ WARNING

Taking your eyes off the road for extended periods could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to you or others. Do not give extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving.

This system provides access to many audio and non audio listings.

To minimize taking your eyes off the road while driving, do the following while the vehicle is parked:

- Become familiar with the operation and controls of the audio system.
- Set up the tone, speaker adjustments, and preset radio stations.

For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Contact your dealer before adding any equipment.**

Adding audio or communication equipment could interfere with the operation of the engine, radio, or other systems, and could damage them. Follow federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone equipment.

Notice: **The chime signals related to safety belts, parking brake, and other functions of the vehicle operate through the radio/entertainment system. If that equipment is replaced or additional equipment is added to the vehicle, the chimes may not work. Make sure that replacement or additional equipment is compatible with the vehicle before installing it. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-4*.**

The vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-30* for more information.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

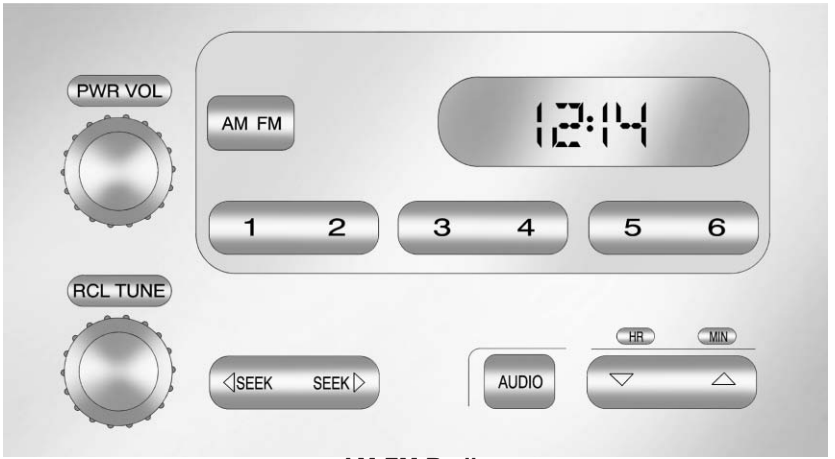
TheftLock® is designed to discourage theft of the radio. The feature works automatically by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). If the radio is moved to a different vehicle, it does not operate and either LOC or LOCKED displays.

When the radio and vehicle are turned off, there may be a blinking red light to indicate TheftLock is armed.

With TheftLock activated, the radio does not operate if stolen.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operation



AM-FM Radio

Information Provided by:
DEALER
E-PROCESS

Radio with CD (MP3/WMA)

Playing the Radio

AM-FM Radio

PWR (Power): Press to turn the system on and off.

VOL (Volume): Turn to increase or to decrease the volume.

RCL (Recall) : Press to switch the display between the radio station frequency, band, and the time. When the ignition is off, press to display the time.

Radio with CD (MP3/WMA)

PWR (Power): Press to turn the system on and off.

◀ VOL ▶ (Volume): Turn to increase or to decrease the volume.

DISPL (Display): When the ignition is turned off, press to display the time.

For RDS, press the DISPL knob to change what displays while using RDS. The display options are station name, RDS station frequency, PTY (program type), and the name of the program (if available).

For XM™ (if equipped), press the DISPL knob while in XM mode to retrieve four different categories of information related to the current song or channel: Artist, Song Title, Category or PTY, Channel Number/ Channel Name.

To change the default on the display, press the DISPL knob until you see the desired display, then press and hold this knob for two seconds and the radio beeps once.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUTO VOL (Automatic Volume): Automatic volume automatically adjusts the audio system to make up for road and wind noise while driving. The volume level should always sound the same while driving.

Set the volume at the desired level. Press to select LOW, MEDIUM, and HIGH. AVOL displays. Each higher setting allows for higher volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds.

NONE displays if the radio cannot determine the vehicle speed. To turn automatic volume off, press until OFF displays.

Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble)

AM-FM Radio

To adjust the bass or treble:

1. Press and release the AUDIO button until BAS (bass) or TRE (treble) displays.
2. Press and hold the △ or ▽ button to increase or to decrease the tone.

To adjust the bass or treble to the center position:

1. Press and release the AUDIO button until BAS (bass) or TRE (treble) displays.
2. Press and hold the AUDIO button for more than two seconds until a beep sounds.

To adjust both tone controls and both speaker controls to the middle position:

1. Exit out of audio mode by pressing another button, causing the radio to perform that function or wait five seconds for the display to return to time of day.
2. Press and hold AUDIO for more than two seconds until a beep sounds. CEN (center) displays.

Radio with CD (MP3/WMA)

To adjust the bass or treble:

1. Press and release the AUDIO knob until BASS (bass) or TREB (treble) displays.
2. Turn the AUDIO knob to increase or to decrease the tone.

To adjust the bass/treble to the middle position, press and hold the AUDIO knob. The radio produces one beep and adjusts the display level to the middle position.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control displays. ALL CENTERED displays and a beep sounds.

AUTO EQ (Automatic Equalization): Press to select customized equalization settings designed for country/western, jazz, talk, pop, rock, and classical.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To return to the manual mode, press the AUTO EQ button until CUSTOM displays. Then manually adjust the bass/treble, using the AUDIO knob.

Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

Fade may not be available if the vehicle is a regular cab model.

AM-FM Radio

To adjust balance or fade:

1. Press and release the AUDIO button until BAL (balance) or FAD (fade) displays.
2. Press and hold the △ or ▽ button to increase or to decrease the level.

To adjust the balance or fade to the center position:

1. Press and release the AUDIO button until BAL (balance) or FAD (fade) displays.
2. Press and hold the AUDIO button for more than two seconds until a beep sounds.

To adjust both speaker controls and both tone controls to the middle position:

1. Exit out of audio mode by pressing another button, causing the radio to perform that function or wait five seconds for the display to return to time of day.
2. Press and hold AUDIO for more than two seconds until a beep sounds. CEN (center) displays.

Radio with CD (MP3/WMA)

To adjust the balance or fade:

1. Press and release the AUDIO knob until BAL (balance) or FADE (fade) displays.
2. Turn the AUDIO knob to increase or to decrease the level.

To adjust the balance or fade to the middle position:

1. Press and release the AUDIO knob until BAL (balance) or FADE (fade) displays.
2. Press and hold the AUDIO knob until one beep sounds.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control displays. ALL CENTERED displays and a beep sounds.

Radio Messages

AM-FM Radio

CAL (Calibration Error): The audio system has been calibrated for the vehicle from the factory. If CAL displays it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and it must be returned to your dealer for service.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

LOC (Locked): This message displays when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer.

Radio with CD (MP3/WMA)

CAL ERR (Calibration Error): The audio system has been calibrated for the vehicle from the factory. If CAL ERR displays it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and it must be returned to your dealer for service.

LOCKED: This message displays when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Finding a Station

AM-FM Radio

AM FM: Press to switch between FM1, FM2, or AM.

TUNE : Turn to select radio stations.

◁ **SEEK:** Press to go to the previous station and stay there.

To scan stations, press and hold ◁ SEEK for two seconds until a beep sounds. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press ◁ SEEK again to stop scanning.

To scan preset stations, press and hold ◁ SEEK for more than four seconds until two beeps sound. The radio goes to the first preset station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next preset station. Press ◁ SEEK again to stop scanning presets.

SEEK ▷ : Press to go to the next station and stay there.

To scan stations, press and hold SEEK ▷ for two seconds until a beep sounds. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press SEEK ▷ again to stop scanning.

To scan preset stations, press and hold SEEK ▷ for more than four seconds until two beeps sound. The radio goes to the first preset station stored on the pushbuttons, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next preset station. Press SEEK ▷ again to stop scanning presets.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio with CD (MP3/WMA)

BAND: Press to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped). The selection displays.

◀ **TUNE** ▶ **:** Turn to select radio stations.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ **:** Press to go to the previous or next station and stay there.

◀ **SCAN** ▶ **:** Press and hold for more than two seconds, SCAN displays and the radio beeps once. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press ◀ or ▶ again, to stop scanning presets.

To scan preset stations, press and hold ◀ or ▶ for more than four seconds, PSCN displays and the radio beeps once. The radio goes to a preset station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next preset station. Press ◀ or ▶ again, to stop scanning presets.

Radio Data System (RDS)

The Radio with CD (MP3/WMA) has an RDS system. RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information.

With RDS, the radio can do the following:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming.
- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies.
- Display messages from radio stations.
- Seek to stations with traffic announcements.

This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station could broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While the radio is tuned to an RDS station, the station name or call letters display instead of the frequency. RDS stations can also provide the time of day, a program type (PTY) for current programming, and the name of the program being broadcast.

RDS Messages

ALERT!: The Alert feature warns of local or national emergencies. When an alert announcement comes on the current radio station, ALERT! displays. The announcement is heard, even if the volume is low or a CD is playing. If a CD is playing, play stops during the announcement. Alert announcements cannot be turned off.

ALERT! is not affected by tests of the emergency broadcast system. This feature is not supported by all RDS stations.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

INFO (Information): If the current station has a message, the information symbol or INFO displays. Press this button to see the message. The message can display the artist, song title, call in phone numbers, etc.

If the entire message is not displayed, parts of the message display every three seconds. To scroll through the message, press and release the INFO button. A new group of words displays after every press of this button. Once the complete message has displayed, the information symbol or INFO disappears from the display until another new message is received. The last message can be displayed by pressing the INFO button. The last message stays on the display until a new message is received or the radio is tuned to a different station.

When a message is not available from a station, NO INFO displays.

TRAF (Traffic): TRAF displays when the station tuned to broadcasts traffic announcements. When a traffic announcement is broadcast on this station you will hear it.

If the station does not broadcast traffic announcements, press the TRAF button and the radio seeks to a station that does. When a station that broadcasts traffic announcements is found, the radio stops seeking and TRAF displays. If no station is found that broadcasts traffic announcements, NO TRAF displays.

If TRAF displays, press the TRAF button to turn off the traffic announcements.

The radio plays the traffic announcement if the volume is low. The radio interrupts the play of a CD if the last tuned station broadcasts traffic announcements.

Finding a Program Type (PTY) Station

To select and find a PTY station:

1. Turn the P-TYPE knob. TYPE and a PTY displays.
2. Turn the P-TYPE knob again, to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY displays, press the SEEK / TYPE button to select PTY's first station.
4. To go to another station within that PTY, press the SEEK / TYPE button twice to display the PTY and then go to another station.

To cancel the seek, press the SEEK / TYPE button. This also exits the program type seek mode and returns to the last tuned station.

If both PTY and TRAF (traffic) are on, the radio searches for stations with the selected PTY and traffic announcements.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the radio cannot find the desired program type, NONE displays and the radio returns to the last tuned station.

SCAN: To scan PTYs, press and hold the SEEK / SCAN until a beep sounds. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station.

BAND (Alternate Frequency): Alternate frequency lets the radio switch to a stronger station with the same program type. To turn alternate frequency on, press and hold BAND for two seconds. AF ON displays. The radio could switch to stations with a stronger frequency.

To turn alternate frequency off, press and hold BAND again for 2 seconds. AF OFF displays. The radio does not switch to other stations.

DISPL (Display): Press to change what information displays while using RDS. The display options are station name, RDS station frequency, PTY (program type), and the name of the program (if available).

Setting Preset PTYs Only

The six pushbuttons have factory PTY presets. Up to 12 PTYs (six FM1 and six FM2), can be programmed on the numbered pushbuttons. To program PTYs:

1. Press BAND to select FM1 or FM2.
2. Turn the P-TYPE knob to activate program type select mode. TYPE and the last selected PTY displays.
3. Turn the P-TYPE knob to select a PTY.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until a beep sounds. When that numbered pushbutton is pressed, the PTY that was set, returns.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

Setting Preset Stations

If the radio does not have XM, up to 18 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM) can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons.

If the radio has XM, up to 30 stations (six FM1, six FM2, six AM, six XM1, and six XM2) can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons.

To program either radio:

1. Tune in the desired station.
2. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until the radio beeps once. When that numbered pushbutton is pressed again, the station that was stored, returns.
3. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Satellite Radio

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM Satellite Radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast-to-coast, and in digital-quality sound. A service fee is required to receive the XM service. If XM Service needs to be reactivated, the radio will display "No Subscription Please Renew" on channel XM1. For more information, contact XM at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S. and www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

Finding a Program Type (PTY) Channel

To select and find a PTY:

1. Turn the P-TYPE knob. TYPE and a PTY displays.
2. Turn the P-TYPE knob again, to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY displays, press the SEEK / TYPE button to select PTY's first station.
4. To go to another station within that PTY, pess the SEEK / TYPE button twice to display the PTY and then go to another station.

To cancel the seek, press the SEEK / TYPE button. This also exits the program type seek mode and returns to the last tuned station.

If the radio cannot find the desired program type, NONE displays and the radio returns to the last tuned station.

Finding an XM Channel

BAND: Press to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped). The selection displays.

DISPL (Display): Press to retrieve four different categories of information related to the current song or channel: Artist, Song Title, Category or PTY, Channel Number/ Channel Name.

◀ TUNE ▶ : Turn to select XM Channels.

◀ SEEK ▶ : Press to go to the previous or next channel and stay there.

◀ SCAN ▶ : Press and hold for more than two seconds, SCAN displays and the radio beeps once. The radio goes to a channel, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next channel. Press ◀ or ▶ again, to stop scanning presets.

To scan preset channels, press and hold ◀ or ▶ for more than four seconds, PSCN displays and the radio beeps once. The radio goes to a preset channel, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next preset channel. Press ◀ or ▶ again, to stop scanning presets.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting Preset Channels

If the radio has XM, up to 30 stations (6 FM1, 6 FM2, 6 AM, 6 XM1, and 6 XM2) can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons.

To program either radio:

1. Tune in the desired channel.
2. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until the radio beeps once. When that numbered pushbutton is pressed again, the channel that was stored, returns.
3. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

XM Radio Messages

XL (Explicit Language Channels): These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S. and 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

Updating: The encryption code in the receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.

No Signl: The system is functioning correctly, but the vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM signal. When the vehicle is moved into an open area, the signal should return.

Loading: The radio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.

Off Air: This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel.

CH Unavl: This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of the presets, choose another station for that preset button.

Unauth: This channel is blocked or cannot be received with your XM Subscription package.

No Info: No artist, song title, category, or text information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No Subscription Please Renew: XM subscription needs to be reactivated. Contact XM at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S. and www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

NotFound: No artist, song title, category, or text information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

XM Lock: The XM receiver in your vehicle could have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

message is received after having your vehicle serviced, check with your dealer.

Radio ID: If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there could be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer.

Unknown: If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there could be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer.

Check XM: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as cell phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

FM Stereo

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 miles). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast-to-coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the XM signal for a period of time.

Cellular Phone Usage

Cellular phone usage may cause interference with the vehicle's radio. This interference may occur when making or receiving phone calls, charging the phone's battery, or simply having the phone on. This interference causes an increased level of static while listening to the radio. If static is received while listening to the radio, unplug the cellular phone and turn it off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fixed Mast Antenna

The fixed mast antenna can withstand most car washes without being damaged as long as it is securely attached to the base. If the mast becomes slightly bent, straighten it out by hand. If the mast is badly bent, replace it.

Occasionally check to make sure the antenna is tightened to its base. If tightening is required, tighten by hand until fully seated plus one quarter turn.

Satellite Radio Antenna

The XM Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of the vehicle. Keep the antenna clear of obstructions for clear radio reception.

Audio Players

CD Player

Care of The CD Player

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen.

The use of CD lens cleaners for CDs is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD player mechanism.

Notice: **If a label is added to a CD, more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

If an error displays, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

Care of CDs

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality can be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. Handle them carefully. Store CD-R(s) in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The CD player scans the bottom surface of the disc. If the surface of a CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD does not play properly or not at all. Do not touch the bottom side of a CD while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up CDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the surface of a CD is soiled, take a soft, lint free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

Playing a CD

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in, and READING displays. The CD should begin playing. To insert a CD with the ignition off, first press the ⏏ (eject) button or the DISPL knob.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts to play where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

When the CD is inserted, the CD symbol displays. As each new track starts to play, the track number displays.

The CD player can play the smaller 8 cm (3 in) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

3 REV (Fast Reverse): Press and hold to reverse quickly within a track. Press and hold for less than two seconds to reverse at 10 times the normal playing speed. Press and hold for more than two seconds to reverse at 20 times the normal playing speed. Release to play the track.

4 FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold to advance quickly within a track. Press and hold for less than two seconds to advance at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold for more than two seconds to advance at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release to play the track.

6 RDM (Random): Press to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ON displays. RDM and the track number displays when each track starts to play. Press again to turn off random play. RDM OFF displays.

◀ SEEK ▶: Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current or the previous track. Press the right arrow to go to the start of the next track. Pressing either arrow for more than two seconds scans the next tracks, playing the first eight seconds of each track until all of the tracks have been previewed. Press either arrow again to stop scanning and to play the track.

◀ TUNE ▶: Turn to go to the previous or next track.

DISPL (Display): Press to see how long the current track has been playing. ET and the elapsed time of the track displays. To change the default on the display (track or elapsed time), press until you see the desired display, then press and hold for two seconds. The radio beeps once. The selected display is now the default.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

BAND: Press to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The inactive CD remains inside the radio for future listening.

CD AUX (Auxiliary): Press to play a CD when listening to the radio. The CD symbol displays when a CD is loaded.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press to eject a CD. Eject can be activated with either the ignition or radio off. CDs can be loaded with the ignition and radio off if this button is pressed first.

Playing an MP3/WMA Disc

MP3/WMA CD-R Disc Format

If you burn your own MP3/WMA disc on a personal computer:

- Make sure the MP3/WMA files are recorded on a CD-R disc.
- Make sure playlists have a .m3u or .wpl extension, other file extensions might not work.
- Files can be recorded with a variety of fixed or variable bit rates. Song title, artist name, and album are displayed by the radio when recorded using ID3 tags version 1 and 2.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organize songs by albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.
- Make sure to finalize the disc when burning an MP3/WMA disc, using multiple sessions. It is usually better to burn the disc all at once.

The player is able to read and play a maximum of 253 folders, 50 playlists, 20 sessions, and 949 files. Long file names, folder names, or playlist names may use more disc memory space than necessary. To conserve space on the disc, minimize the length of the file, folder, or playlist names. An MP3/WMA CD-R that was recorded using no file folders can also be used. The system can support up to 11 folders in depth, though, keep the depth of the folders to a minimum in order to keep down the complexity and confusion in trying to locate a particular folder during playback. If a CD contains more than the maximum of 253 folders, 50 playlists, 20 sessions, and 949 files, the player lets you access and navigate up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum are played.

Root Directory

The root directory is treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory displays as F1 ROOT. All files contained directly under the root directory are accessed prior to any root directory folders. However, playlists (Px) are always accessed before root folders or files.

Empty Directory or Folder

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

beneath them, the player advances to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files. The empty folder does not display.

No Folder

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files are located under the root folder. The next and previous folder functions have no function on a CD that was recorded without folders or playlists. When displaying the name of the folder the radio displays ROOT.

When the CD contains only playlists and compressed audio files, but no folders, all files are located under the root folder. The folder down and the folder up buttons search playlists (Px) first and then go to the root folder. When the radio displays the name of the folder, the radio displays ROOT.

Order of Play

Tracks are played in the following order:

- Play begins from the first track in the first playlist and continues sequentially through all tracks in each playlist. When the last track of the last playlist has played, play continues from the first track of the first playlist.
- If the CD does not contain any playlists, then play begins from the first track under the root directory. When all tracks from the root directory have played, play continues from files according to their numerical listing. After playing the last track from the last folder, play begins again at the first track of the first folder or root directory.

When play enters a new folder, the display does not automatically show the new folder name unless you have chosen the folder mode as the default display. See DISPL (display) later in this section for more information. The new track name displays.

File System and Naming

The song name that displays is the song name that is contained in the ID3 tag. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio displays the file name without the extension (such as .mp3) as the track name.

Track names longer than 32 characters or four pages are shortened. Parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename does not display.

Preprogrammed Playlists

Preprogrammed playlists which were created by WinAmp™, MusicMatch™, or Real Jukebox™ software can be accessed, however, they cannot be edited. These playlists are treated as special folders containing compressed audio song files.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playing an MP3/WMA

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in, and READING displays. The CD should begin playing and the CD symbol displays. If you want to insert a CD with the ignition off, first press the ⏏ button or the DISPL knob.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with a CD in the player it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts to play where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

As each new track starts to play, the track number displays.

1 FLD ▽ (Previous Folder): Press this button to go to the first track in the previous folder. Pressing this button while in folder random mode takes you to the previous folder and plays the tracks in random order in that folder.

2 FLD △ (Next Folder): Press this button to go to the first track in the next folder. Pressing this button while in folder random mode takes the CD to the next folder and plays the tracks in random order in that folder.

3 REV (Reverse): Press and hold this button to reverse quickly within a track. Press and hold this button for less than two seconds to reverse at 10 times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to reverse at 20 times the normal playing speed. Release this button to play the track.

4 FWD (Forward): Press and hold this button to advance quickly within a track. Press and hold this button for less than two seconds to advance at 10 times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to advance at 20 times the normal playing speed. Release this button to play the track.

6 RDM (Random): To play the tracks in random order in the current folder or playlist, press and release this button. FLDR RDM (folder random) displays. Once all of the tracks in the current folder or playlist have played, the system moves to the next folder or playlist and plays all of the tracks in random order.

To play all the tracks in random order on the CD, press and hold this button for two seconds. A beep sounds and DISC RDM (disc random) displays. This feature does not work with playlists.

When in random, pressing and releasing either SEEK arrow takes the CD to the previous or to the next random track.

Press and release this button again to turn off random play. NO RDM (no random) displays.

◀ SEEK ▶: Press the left SEEK arrow to go to the start of the previous track. Press the right SEEK arrow to go to the start of the next track. Pressing either

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SEEK arrow for more than two seconds searches the previous or next tracks at two tracks per second. Release the button to stop searching and to play the track.

◀ TUNE ▶ : Turn to reverse or advance through the tracks in all folders or playlists. The track number and file name displays for each track. Turning this knob while in random reverses or advances the tracks in sequential order.

DISPL (Display): Press this knob to switch between track mode, folder/playlist mode, and time of day mode. The display shows only eight characters, but there can be up to four pages of text. If there are more than eight characters in the song, folder, or playlist name, pressing this knob within two seconds takes you to the next page of text. If there are no other pages to be shown, pressing this knob within two seconds takes you to the next display mode.

- Track mode displays the current track number and the ID3 tag song name.
- Folder/playlist mode displays the current folder or playlist number and the folder/playlist name.
- Time of day mode displays the time of day and the ID3 tag song name.

To change the default on the display, press the DISPL knob until you see the desired display, then press and hold this knob for two two seconds. The radio produces one beep and the selected display is now the default.

INFO (Information): INFO displays when a current track has ID3 tag information. Press this button to display the artist name and album contained in the tag. INFO disappears from the display when the information in the ID3 tag has finished being read.

BAND: Press this button to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The inactive CD remains inside the radio for future listening.

CD AUX (Auxiliary): Press this button to play a CD when listening to the radio. The CD symbol illuminates on the display when a CD is loaded.

⏏ (Eject): Press this button to eject a CD. Eject can activate while either the ignition or radio is off. CDs can be loaded with the ignition and radio off if this button is pressed first.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CD Messages

CHECK CD: If this message displays and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- The format of the CD might not be compatible. See “Using an MP3” later in this section.
- There could have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label could be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer when reporting the problem.

Phone

Bluetooth

For vehicles equipped with Bluetooth capability, the system can interact with many cell phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the cell phone’s address book or contact list with the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the cell phone. Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair cell phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all cell phones. See “Pairing a Phone” in this section for more information.
- If the cell phone has voice dialing capability, learn to use that feature to access the address book or contact list. See “Voice Pass-Thru” in this section for more information.
- See “Storing and Deleting Phone Numbers” in this section for more information.

⚠ WARNING

When using a cell phone, it can be distracting to look too long or too often at the screen of the phone or the infotainment (navigation) system. Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The system can be used while the key is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY position. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m (30 ft). Not all phones support all functions, and not all phones are guaranteed to work with the Bluetooth system.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

See www.gm.com/bluetooth for more information on compatible phones.

Voice Recognition

The Bluetooth system uses voice recognition to interpret voice commands to dial phone numbers and name tags.

For additional information say “Help” while you are in a voice recognition menu.

Noise: Keep interior noise levels to a minimum. The system may not recognize voice commands if there is too much background noise.

When to Speak: A short tone sounds after the system responds indicating when it is waiting for a voice command. Wait until the tone and then speak.

How to Speak: Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

Audio System

When using the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the audio system volume knob, during a call, to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. To prevent missed calls, a minimum volume level is used if the volume is turned down too low.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the button, located on the driver side of the instrument panel near the headlamp controls, to operate the Bluetooth system.

(Push To Talk) : Press to answer incoming calls, to confirm system information, and to start speech recognition.

Pairing

A Bluetooth cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone. If a Bluetooth phone is not connected, calls will be made using OnStar® Hands-Free Calling, if available. Refer to the OnStar owner's guide for more information.

Pairing Information

- Up to five cell phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the cell phone changes or the cell phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired cell phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired cell phone in the order that they were first paired to the system. To link to a different paired phone, see “Linking to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Press and release .
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Pair.” The system responds with instructions and a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN).
4. Start the pairing process on the cell phone that you want to pair. For help with this process, see your cell phone manufacturer's user guide.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Locate the device named “Your Vehicle” in the list on the cell phone. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the PIN that was provided in Step 3. After the PIN is successfully entered, the system prompts you to provide a name for the paired cell phone. This name will be used to indicate which phones are paired and connected to the vehicle, see “Listing All Paired and Connected Phones” later in this section for more information.
6. Repeat Steps 1 through 5 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

The system can list all cell phones paired to it. If a paired cell phone is also connected to the vehicle, the system responds with “is connected” after that phone name.

1. Press and release .
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “List.”

Deleting a Paired Phone

If the phone name you want to delete is unknown, see “Listing All Paired and Connected Phones.”

1. Press and release .
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Delete.” The system asks for which phone to delete.
4. Say the name of the phone you want to delete.

Connecting to a Different Phone

To connect to a different cell phone, the Bluetooth system looks for the next available cell phone in the order in which all the available cell phones were paired. Depending on which cell phone you want to connect to, you may have to use this command several times.

1. Press and release .
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Change phone.”
   - If another cell phone is found, the response will be “<Phone name> is now connected.”
   - If another cell phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

Storing and Deleting Phone Numbers

The system can store up to 30 phone numbers as name tags in the Hands Free Directory that is shared between the Bluetooth and OnStar systems.

The following commands are used delete and store phone numbers.

Store: This command will store a phone number, or a group of numbers as a name tag.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Digit Store: This command allows a phone number to be stored as a name tag by entering the digits one at a time.

Delete: This command is used to delete individual name tags.

Delete All Name Tags: This command deletes all stored name tags in the Hands Free Calling Directory and the OnStar Turn by Turn Destinations Directory.

Using the "Store" Command

1. Press and release .
2. Say "Store."
3. Say the phone number or group of numbers you want to store all at once with no pauses, then follow the directions given by the system to save a name tag for this number.

Using the "Digit Store" Command

If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say "Clear" at any time to clear the last number.

To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say "Verify" at any time.

1. Press and release .
2. Say "Digit Store."
3. Say each digit, one at a time, that you want to store. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone. After the last digit has been entered, say "Store," and then follow the directions given by the system to save a name tag for this number.

Using the "Delete" Command

1. Press and release .
2. Say "Delete."
3. Say the name tag you want to delete.

Using the "Delete All Name Tags" Command

This command deletes all stored name tags in the Hands Free Calling Directory and the OnStarTurn by Turn Destinations Directory.

To delete all name tags:

1. Press and release .
2. Say "Delete all name tags."

Listing Stored Numbers

The list command will list all the stored numbers and name tags.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the "List" Command

1. Press and release .
2. Say "Directory."
3. Say "Hands Free Calling."
4. Say "List."

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

Dial or Call: The dial or call command can be used interchangeably to dial a phone number or a stored name tag.

Digit Dial: This command allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time.

Re-dial: This command is used to dial the last number used on the cell phone.

Using the "Dial" or "Call" Command

1. Press and release .
2. Say "Dial" or "Call."
3. Say the entire number without pausing or say the name tag.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the "Digit Dial" Command

The digit dial command allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone.

If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say "Clear" at any time to clear the last number.

To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say "Verify" at any time.

1. Press and release .
2. Say "Digit Dial."
3. Say each digit, one at a time, that you want to dial. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone. After the last digit has been entered, say "Dial."

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the "Re-dial" Command

1. Press and release .
2. After the tone, say "Re-dial."

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Receiving a Call

When an incoming call is received, the audio system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle. Press and release to answer the call.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

- Press and release to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press and release again to return to the original call.
- To ignore the incoming call, continue with the original call with no action.

Three-Way Calling

Three-Way Calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

1. While on a call press and release .
2. Say “Three-way call.”
3. Use the dial or call command to dial the number of the third party to be called.
4. Once the call is connected, press to link all the callers together.

Ending a Call

To end a call:

1. Press and release .
2. Say “End Call.”

Muting a Call

During a call, all sounds from inside the vehicle can be muted so that the person on the other end of the call cannot hear them.

To mute a call, press , and then say “Mute Call.”

To cancel mute, press , and then say “Un-mute Call.”

Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the Bluetooth system and the cell phone.

The cell phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth system before a call can be transferred. The connection process can take up to two minutes after the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.

To Transfer Audio From the Bluetooth System to a Cell Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle:

1. Press and release .
2. Say “Transfer Call.”

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To Transfer Audio to the Bluetooth System From a Cell Phone

During a call with the audio on the cell phone, press for more than two seconds. The audio transfers to the vehicle. If the audio does not transfer to the vehicle, use the audio transfer feature on the cell phone. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for more information.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice Pass-Thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the cell phone supports this feature. This feature can be used to verbally access contacts stored in the cell phone.

1. Press and release .
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Voice.”
   - The cell phone's normal prompt messages will go through its cycle according to the phone's operating instructions.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The Bluetooth system can send numbers and the numbers stored as name tags during a call. You can use this feature when calling a menu driven phone system. Account numbers can also be stored for use.

Sending a Number or Name Tag During a Call

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial.”
3. Say the number or name tag to send.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained indefinitely. This includes all saved name tags in the phonebook and phone pairing information. For information on how to delete this information, see the above sections on Deleting a Paired Phone and Deleting Name Tags.

Other Information

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-17* for Federal Communications Commission and Industry Canada information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

✍ NOTES

Information Provided by
DEALER E-PROCESS

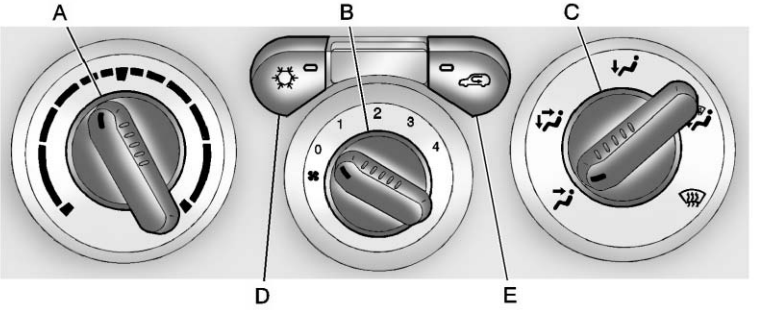
Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Climate Control Systems 8-1

Air Vents
Air Vents 8-3

Climate Control Systems

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with this system.



A. Temperature Control
B. Fan Control
C. Air Delivery Mode Control
D. Air Conditioning
E. Recirculation

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Temperature Control: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the temperature of the air inside the vehicle.

(Fan Control): Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed.

If the knob is set on “0” (zero), some outside air will still enter the vehicle and will be directed according to the position of the mode knob.

Air Delivery Mode Control: Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to change the current airflow mode.

Select from the following modes:

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and floor and side window outlets. Cooler air is directed to the upper outlets and warmer air to the floor outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets. Recirculation cannot be selected while in floor mode because this could cause the interior window to fog.

(Floor/Defog): This mode clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the floor, windshield, and side window outlets. When this mode is selected, the system runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is near freezing or below. Recirculation is not available in this mode.

(Defrost): This mode clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield and side window outlets. When this mode is selected, the system runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is near, or below freezing. Recirculation is not available in this mode.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

(Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the air conditioning is on.

The fan control must be on to use the air conditioning.

There might be a slight change in engine performance when the air conditioning compressor shuts off and turns on again. This is normal. The system is designed to make adjustments to help with fuel economy while still maintaining the selected temperature.

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so a small amount of water might drip under the vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

(Recirculation): Press to turn the recirculation mode on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the recirculation mode is on. This mode recirculates and helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle. It can be used to prevent outside air and odors from entering the vehicle.

The recirculation mode cannot be used with floor/defog, defrost, or defogging modes. If recirculation is selected in these modes, the indicator will flash or not come on.

Air Vents

Use the thumbwheel on the outlets to change the direction of the air flow.

Lift up or push down on the thumbwheel located in the center of the outlet to direct the air up or down, or slide the thumbwheel to the left or right to direct the airflow from side-to-side.

Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow or leaves from the air inlets at the base of the windshield that may block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors may adversely affect the performance of the system.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside of the vehicle more effectively.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

✍ NOTES

Information Provided by
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Defensive Driving 9-2
Drunk Driving 9-2
Control of a Vehicle 9-3
Braking 9-3
Steering 9-4
Off-Road Recovery 9-5
Loss of Control 9-5
Off-Road Driving 9-6
Driving on Wet Roads 9-16
Highway Hypnosis 9-16
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-17
Winter Driving 9-17
If the Vehicle is Stuck 9-19
Vehicle Load Limits 9-20
Truck-Camper Loading Information 9-26

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In 9-26
Ignition Positions 9-27
Starting the Engine 9-28
Engine Heater 9-29
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 9-30
Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission) 9-30
Shifting Out of Park (Automatic Transmission) 9-32
Parking (Manual Transmission) 9-32
Parking Over Things That Burn 9-33

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 9-33
Running the Vehicle While Parked 9-34

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 9-35

Manual Transmission
Manual Transmission 9-37

Drive Systems
Four-Wheel Drive 9-39

Brakes
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 9-43
Parking Brake 9-44
Brake Assist 9-45

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control System (TCS) 9-46
StabiliTrak® System 9-47
Limited-Slip Rear Axle 9-48

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 9-49

Fuel
Fuel 9-51
Recommended Fuel 9-51
Gasoline Specifications (U.S. and Canada Only) 9-52
California Fuel Requirements 9-52
Fuels in Foreign Countries . . . 9-52
Fuel Additives 9-53
Filling the Tank 9-54
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 9-55

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing
General Towing Information 9-56
Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips 9-56
Trailer Towing 9-60
Towing Equipment 9-66

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-67
Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab 9-67

Driving Information

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means “always expect the unexpected.” The first step in driving defensively is to wear the safety belt. See *Safety Belts on page 3-12*.

⚠ WARNING

Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. In addition:

- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Driver distraction can cause collisions resulting in injury or possible death. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

Drunk Driving

⚠ WARNING

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking.

Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle: judgment, muscular coordination, vision, and attentiveness.

Police records show that almost 40 percent of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 17,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with about 250,000 people injured.

For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological, and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive.

Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

Control of a Vehicle

The following three systems help to control the vehicle while driving — brakes, steering, and accelerator. At times, as when driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. Meaning, you can lose control of the vehicle.

Adding non-dealer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-4*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Braking

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-15*.

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination, and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs, and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between the vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road, whether it is

pavement or gravel; the condition of the road, whether it is wet, dry, or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; and the amount of brake force applied.

Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. The brakes might not have time to cool between hard stops. The brakes will wear out much faster with a lot of heavy braking. Keeping pace with the traffic and allowing realistic following distances eliminates a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If the brakes are pumped, the pedal could get harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will still be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Adding non-dealer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-4*.

Steering

Power Steering

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or the power steering system is not functioning, the vehicle can be steered but it will take more effort.

Steering Tips

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

Traction in a curve depends on the condition of the tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and vehicle speed. While in a curve, speed is the one factor that can be controlled.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If there is a need to reduce speed, do it before entering the curve, while the front wheels are straight.

Try to adjust the speed so you can drive through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. These problems can be avoided by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot stop in time because there is no room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

The vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply the brakes. See *Braking on*

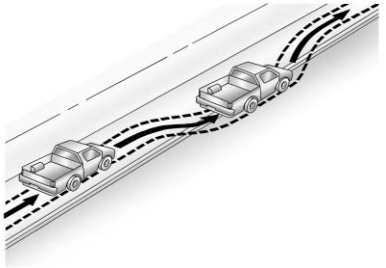
page 9-3. It is better to remove as much speed as possible from a collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.

An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, it can be turned a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

Off-Road Recovery

The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that the vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. Turn the steering wheel 8 to 13 cm (3 to 5 in), about one-eighth turn, until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions,

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to the vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, the wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

If the vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, the vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance is longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You might not realize the surface is slippery until the vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

Off-Road Driving

Vehicles with four-wheel drive can be used for off-road driving. Vehicles without four-wheel drive should not be driven off-road except on a level, solid surface.

The airbag system is designed to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including off-road usage. Always wear your safety belt and observe safe driving speeds, especially on rough terrain.

Drinking and driving can be very dangerous on any road and this is certainly true for off-road driving. At the very time you need special alertness and driving skills, your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious — or even fatal — accident if you drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking.

Off-roading can be great fun but has some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself. When off-road driving, traffic lanes are not marked, curves are not banked, and there are no road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill, or downhill.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers. Failure to operate the vehicle correctly off-road could result in loss of vehicle control or vehicle rollover.

Off-roading involves some new skills. That is why it is very important that you read these driving tips and suggestions to help make off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

Before You Go Off-Roading

- Have all necessary maintenance and service work done.
- Make sure there is enough fuel, that fluid levels are where they should be, and that the spare tire is fully inflated.
- Be sure to read all the information about four-wheel-drive vehicles in this manual.
- Make sure all underbody shields, if the vehicle has them, are properly attached.
- Know the local laws that apply to off-roading where you will be driving or check with law enforcement people in the area.
- Be sure to get the necessary permission if you will be on private land.

Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

⚠ WARNING

- Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Keep cargo below the top of the seatbacks.
- Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.

- Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the floor, forward of the rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is properly secured, so things are not tossed around.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

You will find other important information under *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20* and *Tires on page 10-46*.

Environmental Concerns

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. We recognize these concerns and urge every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment:

- Always use established trails, roads, and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving and obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage shrubs, flowers, trees, or grasses or disturb wildlife. This includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees, or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground.
- Always carry a litter bag and make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires (where permitted), camp stoves, and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

Traveling to Remote Areas

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Check to see if there are any blocked or closed roads.

It is also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle in case something happens to one of them.

For vehicles with a winch, be sure to read the winch instructions. In a remote area, a winch can be handy if you get stuck but you will want to know how to use it properly.

Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving

It is a good idea to practice in an area that is safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-roading requires some new and different skills.

Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. Use your arms, hands, feet, and body to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Controlling the vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control the vehicle is to control the speed. At higher speeds:

- You approach things faster and have less time to react.
- There is less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- The vehicle has more bounce when driving over obstacles.
- More braking distance is needed, especially on an unpaved surface.

⚠ WARNING

When you are driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you are driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.

Scanning the Terrain

Off-road driving can take you over many different kinds of terrain. Be familiar with the terrain and its many different features.

Surface Conditions: Off-roading surfaces can be hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow, or ice. Each of these surfaces affects the vehicle's steering, acceleration, and braking in different ways. Depending on the surface, slipping, sliding, wheel spinning, delayed acceleration, poor traction, and longer braking distances can occur.

Surface Obstacles: Unseen or hidden obstacles can be hazardous. A rock, log, hole, rut, or bump can startle you if you are not prepared for them. Often these obstacles are hidden by grass, bushes, snow, or even the rise and fall of the terrain itself.

Some things to consider:

- Is the path ahead clear?
- Will the surface texture change abruptly up ahead?
- Does the travel take you uphill or downhill?
- Will you have to stop suddenly or change direction quickly?

When driving over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs, or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands.

When driving over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, the wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you cannot control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it is especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns, or sudden braking.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Off-roading requires a different kind of alertness from driving on paved roads and highways. There are no road signs, posted speed limits, or signal lights. Use good judgment about what is safe and what is not.

Driving on Hills

Off-road driving often takes you up, down, or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and an understanding of what the vehicle can and cannot do. There are some hills that simply cannot be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you cannot control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, do not drive the hill.

Approaching a Hill

When you approach a hill, decide if it is too steep to climb, descend, or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top. On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you might not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass, or shrubs.

Consider this as you approach a hill:

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you will not have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path, such as boulders, trees, logs, or ruts?
- What is beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you do not know. It is the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs, and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving Uphill

Once you decide it is safe to drive up the hill:

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain speed. Not using more power than needed can avoid spinning the wheels or sliding.

⚠ WARNING

Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.

- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.
- Ease up on the speed as you approach the top of the hill.
- Attach a flag to the vehicle to be more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.
- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you are there.
- Use headlamps even during the day to make the vehicle more visible to oncoming traffic.

⚠ WARNING

Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.

If the vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, and you cannot make it up the hill:

- Push the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keep it from rolling backwards and apply the parking brake.
- If the engine is still running, shift the transmission to R (Reverse), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill in R (Reverse).
- If the engine has stopped running, you need to restart it. With the brake pedal pressed and the parking brake still applied, shift the automatic transmission to P (Park) or the manual transmission to Neutral and restart the engine. Then, shift to R (Reverse), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill as straight as possible in R (Reverse).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- While backing down the hill, put your left hand on the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position so you can tell if the wheels are straight and can maneuver as you back down. It is best to back down the hill with the wheels straight rather than in the left or right direction. Turning the wheel too far to the left or right will increase the possibility of a rollover.

Things not to do if the vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, when going up a hill:

- Never attempt to prevent a stall by shifting into N (Neutral), or pressing the clutch pedal if the vehicle has a manual transmission, to rev-up the engine and regain forward momentum. This will not work. The vehicle can roll backward very quickly and could go out of control.
- Never try to turn around if about to stall when going up a hill. If the hill is steep enough to stall the vehicle, it is steep enough to cause it to roll over. If you cannot make it up the hill, back straight down the hill.

If, after stalling, you try to back down the hill and decide you just cannot do it, set the parking brake, shift to P (Park) or 1 (First) with a manual transmission, and turn off the engine. Leave the vehicle and go get some help. Exit on the uphill side and stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill. Do not shift the transfer case to Neutral when you leave the vehicle. Leave it in some gear.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting the transfer case to Neutral can cause your vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). This is because the

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Neutral position on the transfer case overrides the transmission. You or someone else could be injured. If you are going to leave your vehicle, set the parking brake and shift the transmission to P (Park). But do not shift the transfer case to Neutral.

Driving Downhill

When off-roading takes you downhill, consider:

- How steep is the downhill? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What is the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- What is at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, try to keep the vehicle headed straight down. Use a low gear so engine drag can help the brakes so they do not have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping the vehicle under control at all times.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.

Things not to do when driving down a hill:

- When driving downhill, avoid turns that take you across the incline of the hill. A hill that is not too steep to drive down might be too steep to drive across. The vehicle could roll over.
- Never go downhill with the transmission in N (Neutral), called free-wheeling. The brakes will have to do all the work and could overheat and fade.

Vehicles are much more likely to stall when going uphill, but if it happens when going downhill:

1. Stop the vehicle by applying the regular brakes and apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to P (Park) and, while still braking, restart the engine.
3. Shift back to a low gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down.
4. If the engine will not start, get out and get help.

Powered by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving Across an Incline

An off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. To decide whether to try to drive across the incline, consider the following:

⚠ WARNING

Driving across an incline that is too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, do not drive across it. Find another route instead.

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down might be too steep to drive across. When going straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base — the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels — reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end. But when driving across an incline, the narrower track width — the distance

between the left and right wheels — might not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels which could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.

- Surface conditions can be a problem. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause the tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it — a rock, a rut, etc. — and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, the vehicle can tilt even more.

For these reasons, carefully consider whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline does not mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

If you feel the vehicle starting to slide sideways, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping. The best way to prevent this is to “walk the course” first, so you know what the surface is like before driving it.

Stalling on an Incline

⚠ WARNING

Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.

If the vehicle stalls when crossing an incline, be sure you, and any passengers, get out on the uphill side, even if the door there is harder to open. If you get out on the downhill side and the vehicle starts to roll over, you will be right in its path.

If you have to walk down the slope, stay out of the path the vehicle will take if it does roll over.

Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow, or Ice

When you drive in mud, snow, or sand, the wheels do not get good traction. Acceleration is not as quick, turning is more difficult, and braking distances are longer.

It is best to use a low gear when in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, keep the vehicle moving so it does not get stuck.

When driving on sand, wheel traction changes. On loosely packed sand, such as on beaches or sand dunes, the tires will tend to sink into the sand. This affects steering,

DEALER E-PROCESS

accelerating, and braking. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it is very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And, if the vehicle does get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause it to slide out of control.

⚠ WARNING

Driving on frozen lakes, ponds, or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.

Driving in Water

⚠ WARNING

Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it is only shallow water, it can still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Do not drive through rushing water.

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before driving through it. Do not try it if it is deep enough to cover the wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe — you probably will not get through. Deep water can damage the axle and other vehicle parts.

If the water is not too deep, drive slowly through it. At faster speeds, water splashes on the ignition system and the vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get the tailpipe under water. If the tailpipe is under water, you will never be able to start the engine. When going through water, remember that when the brakes get wet, it might take longer to stop. See *Driving on Wet Roads on page 9-16*.

After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody, chassis, or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires, and exhaust system for damage and check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The vehicle requires more frequent service due to off-road use. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule for additional information.

Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 10-46*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park the vehicle and rest.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving — scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not shift down, the brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ WARNING

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down and they could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear when going downhill.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Top of hills: Be alert — something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 0°C (32°F) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

The *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 9-43* improves vehicle stability during hard stops on slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control on slippery surfaces.

Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use the *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-9*. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ WARNING

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.
- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.

(Continued)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING (Continued)

- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-33*.

Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (Carbon Monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust.

Run the engine for short periods only as needed to keep warm, but be careful.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat. Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.

If the Vehicle is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See “Rocking Your vehicle to get It Out” later in this section.

If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 55 km/h (35 mph).

For information about using tire chains on the vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 10-66*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

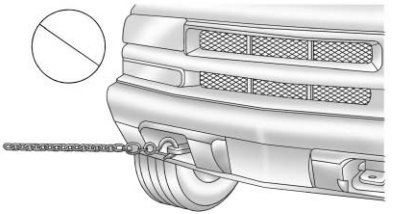
Rocking the Vehicle to get It Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. For four-wheel drive vehicles, shift into 4HI. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear, or with a manual transmission, between 1 (First) or 2 (Second) and R (Reverse), spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. Recovery hooks can be used, if the vehicle has them. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-87*.

Recovery Hooks

⚠ WARNING

These hooks, when used, are under a lot of force. Always pull the vehicle straight out. Never pull on the hooks at a sideways angle. The hooks could break off and you or others could be injured from the chain or cable snapping back.



Notice: **Never use recovery hooks to tow the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged and it would not be covered by warranty.**

For vehicles with recovery hooks at the front of the vehicle, you can use them if you are stuck off-road and need to be pulled to some place where you can continue driving.

Vehicle Load Limits

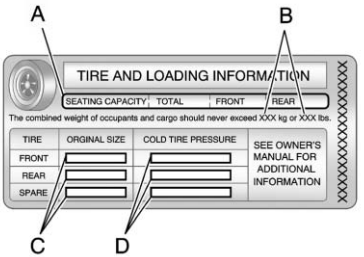
It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification/Tire label.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver door open, you will find the label attached below the door latch post. Vehicle's without a center pillar, like extended cab models, will have the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver side extended cab door, above the door latch post. The Tire and Loading Information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires on page 10-46* and *Tire Pressure on page 10-52*.

There is also important information on the Certification/ Tire label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axles. See “Certification/ Tire Label” later in this section.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400 − 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

   See *Trailer Towing on page 9-60* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety, and trailering tips.

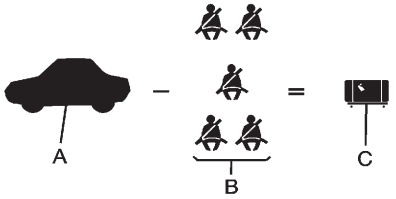
Example 1

A. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)

B. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2 = 136 kg (300 lbs)

C. Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

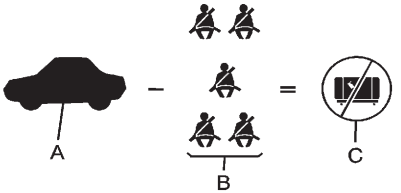


Example 2

A. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)

B. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5 = 340 kg (750 lbs)

C. Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs)



Example 3

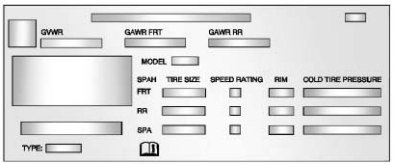
A. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)

B. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs) × 5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs)

C. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs)

Refer to your vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, cargo, and any accessories or equipment added to your vehicle after it left the factory should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification/Tire Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Certification/ Tire label is attached to the bottom section of the driver side center pillar (B-pillar) or on the end of the driver side instrument panel. Vehicles without a center pillar, like extended cab models,

Information Provided by DEALER E-PROCESS

will have the Certification/Tire label attached to the edge of the driver side, extended cab door, below the door latch post. The label shows the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, cargo, and trailer tongue weight, if pulling a trailer.

The Certification/Tire label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

If the load is heavy, it should be spread out.

Similar appearing vehicles may have different GVWRs and capacity weights. Please note your vehicle's Certification/Tire label or consult your dealer for additional details.

⚠ WARNING

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

Notice : **Overloading the vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not overload the vehicle.**

If you put things inside your vehicle — like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else — they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Things you put inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.

There is also important loading information for off-road driving in this manual. See *"Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving"* under *Off-Road Driving on page 9-6*.

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight rating (GAWR) of the front or rear axle.

Two-Tiered Loading

For vehicles with a six foot bed, an upper load platform can be created by positioning four 5 cm (2 inches) by 15 cm (6 inches) wooden planks across the width of the pickup box. The planks must be inserted in the pickup box depressions.

When using this upper load platform, be sure the load is securely tied down to prevent it from shifting. The load's center of gravity should be positioned in a zone over the rear axle.

Any load that extends beyond the vehicle's taillamp area must be properly marked according to local laws and regulations.

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the rear axle.

Add-On Equipment

When you carry removable items, you may need to put a limit on how many people you carry inside your vehicle. Be sure to weigh your vehicle before you buy and install the new equipment.

Notice : **Overloading the vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not overload the vehicle.**

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the rear axle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

A reinforcement kit for mounting a toolbox is recommended. See your dealer.

Truck-Camper Loading Information

The vehicle was neither designed nor intended to carry a slide-in type camper.

Notice: **Adding a slide-in camper or similar equipment to the vehicle can damage it, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not install a slide-in camper or similar equipment on the vehicle.**

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

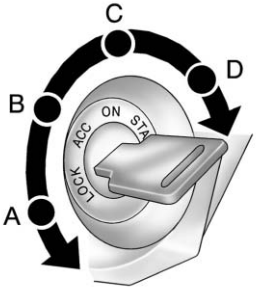
Notice: **The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:**

- **Keep the vehicle speed at 88 km/h (55 mph) or less for the first 805 km (500 miles).**
- **Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 805 km (500 miles). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 322 km (200 miles) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Trailer Towing on page 9-60* for the trailer towing capabilities of the vehicle and more information.**

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Ignition Positions



The ignition switch has four different positions.

To shift out of P (Park), turn the ignition to ON/RUN and apply the regular brake pedal.

Notice: **Using a tool to force the key to turn in the ignition could cause damage to the switch or break the key. Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in, and turn it only with your hand. If the key cannot be turned by hand, see your dealer.**

A (STOPPING THE ENGINE/ LOCK/OFF): When the vehicle is stopped, turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF to turn the engine off. Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-30*.

This position locks the ignition. It also locks the transmission on automatic transmission vehicles. It locks the steering wheel on manual transmission vehicles. The key can only be removed in LOCK/OFF.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

In an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to neutral. This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to neutral, firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or neutral with a manual transmission. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
4. Set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.

On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.

The steering can bind with the wheels turned off center. If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left while turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If this doesn't work, then the vehicle needs service.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

B (ACC/ACCESSORY) : This is the position in which you can operate the electrical accessories or items plugged into the accessory power outlets. On automatic transmission vehicles, this position unlocks the ignition. On manual transmission vehicles, it unlocks the ignition and steering wheel. Use this position if the vehicle must be pushed or towed.

C (ON/RUN): This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories and to display some instrument panel cluster warning and indicator lights. The switch stays in this position when the engine is running. The transmission is also unlocked in this position on automatic transmission vehicles.

If you leave the key in the ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off, the battery could be drained. You may not be able to start your vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

D (START): This is the position that starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch returns to ON/RUN for driving.

A warning tone will sound when the driver door is opened, the ignition is in ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF and the key is in the ignition.

Starting the Engine

Place the transmission in the proper gear.

Automatic Transmission

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the vehicle when it is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Notice: **Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.**

Manual Transmission

The shift lever should be in N (Neutral) and the parking brake engaged. Hold the clutch pedal down to the floor and start the engine. The vehicle will not start if the clutch pedal is not all the way down.

Starting Procedure

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as the engine warms. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

   The vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ignition key is turned to the START position, and then released when the

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the key is held in START for many seconds, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF.

Notice: **Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.**

2. If the engine does not start after 5-10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below 0°F or −18°C), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, repeat the procedure. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Notice: **The engine is designed to work with the electronics in the vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you do not, the engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Engine Heater

The engine coolant heater can provide easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up in cold weather conditions at or below −18°C (0°F). Vehicles with an engine coolant heater should be plugged in at least four hours before starting. An internal thermostat in the plug-end of the cord may exist which will prevent engine coolant heater operation at temperatures above −18°C (0°F).

To Use the Engine Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is located in the engine compartment behind the underhood fuse block on the driver side of the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

⚠ WARNING

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord to prevent damage.

The length of time the heater should remain plugged in depends on several factors. Ask a dealer in the area where you will be parking the vehicle for the best advice on this.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These vehicle accessories can be used for up to 20 minutes after the engine is turned off:

- Audio System
- Wipers
- Power Windows

These features work when the key is in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY. Once the key is turned from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF, power to these features continue to work for up to 20 minutes or until a door is opened.

Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)

⚠ WARNING

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-56*.

1. Hold the brake pedal down with your right foot and set the parking brake.

   See *Parking Brake on page 9-44* for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

If you have four-wheel drive, the vehicle will be free to roll — even if the shift lever is in P (Park) — if the transfer case is in Neutral. So, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear, two-wheel high (2H) or four-wheel high (4H) or four-wheel low (4L) — not in Neutral.

2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by pulling the lever toward you and moving it up as far as it will go.
3. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF.
4. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave the vehicle with the key, the vehicle is in P (Park).

Leaving the Vehicle With the Engine Running (Automatic Transmission)

⚠ WARNING

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, be sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you have moved the shift lever into P (Park), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from P (Park) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, the shift lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

Torque Lock (Automatic Transmission)

If you are parking on a hill and you do not shift the transmission into P (Park) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of P (Park). This is called torque lock. To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park) properly before you leave the driver seat. To find out how, see “Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)” in this section.

When you are ready to drive, move the shift lever out of P (Park) before you release the parking brake.

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

the pressure from the parking pawl in the transmission, so you can pull the shift lever out of P (Park).

Shifting Out of Park (Automatic Transmission)

The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You have to fully apply the brake pedal before you can shift from P (Park) when the ignition is ON/RUN. See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-35*.

The shift lock control system is designed to do the following:

- Prevent the ignition key from being removed unless the shift lever is in P (Park).
- Prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN and the brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock control system is always functional except in the case of a dead battery or low voltage (less than 9 V) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting on page 10-84* for more information.

To shift out of P (Park) use the following:

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still are unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Ease the pressure on the shift lever.
2. While holding down the brake pedal, push the shift lever all the way into P (Park).
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you are still having a problem shifting, then have the vehicle serviced.

Parking (Manual Transmission)

If the vehicle has a manual transmission, before you get out of the vehicle, move the shift lever into R (Reverse), and firmly apply the parking brake. Once the shift lever has been placed into R (Reverse) with the clutch pedal pressed in, turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF, remove the key and release the clutch.

If you are parking on a hill, or if the vehicle is pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-56*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking Over Things That Burn

⚠ WARNING

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or after market modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ WARNING

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-33*.

⚠ WARNING

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the automatic transmission shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when it is on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the automatic transmission shift lever to P (Park), or the manual transmission shift lever to Neutral.

⚠ WARNING

Four-wheel drive vehicles with the transfer case in N (Neutral) will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the automatic transmission shift lever is in P (Park). So, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear — not in N (Neutral). Always set the parking brake.

Follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission) on page 9-30*.

If pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-56*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Transmission

The vehicle has a shift lever on the steering column.

It features an electronic shift position indicator within the instrument cluster. This display is powered anytime the shift lever is capable of being moved out of P (Park). This means that if the ignition is turned off, but not in LOCK/OFF, there will be a small current drain on the battery which could discharge the battery over a period of time. If you need to leave the key in the ignition but not in LOCK/OFF for an extended period, it is recommended that you disconnect the battery cable from the battery to prevent discharging the battery.

There are several different positions for the shift lever.

P (Park): This position locks the rear wheels. It is the best position to use when you start the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ WARNING

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground,

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission) on page 9-30*. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-56*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You must fully apply the brake pedal before you can shift from P (Park) when the ignition key is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever by pushing the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting Out of Park (Automatic Transmission) on page 9-32*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

R (Reverse): Use this gear to back up.

Notice: **Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.**

To rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission, see *If the Vehicle is Stuck on page 9-19*.

N (Neutral): In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is are already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Notice: **Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.**

D (Drive): This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than about 55 km/h (35 mph), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 55 km/h (35 mph) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

  The transmission will shift down to the next gear and the vehicle will have more power.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding, see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control on page 9-5*.

3 (Third): This position is also used for normal driving. However, it reduces vehicle speed more than D (Drive) without using the brakes. You might choose 3 (Third) instead of D (Drive) when driving on hilly, winding roads, or when towing a trailer, so there is less shifting between gears and when going down a steep hill.

2 (Second): This position reduces vehicle speed even more than 3 (Third) without using the brakes. You can use 2 (Second) to help control vehicle speed on steep

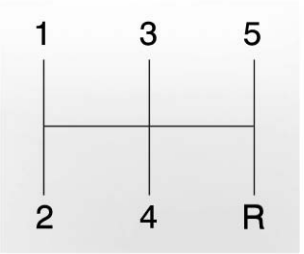
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

mountain roads, but then you would also want to use the brakes off and on.

1 (First): This position reduces vehicle speed even more than 2 (Second) without using the brakes. You can use it on very steep hills, or in deep snow or mud. If the shift lever is put in 1 (First) while the vehicle is moving forward, the transmission will not shift into first gear until the vehicle is going slowly enough.

Notice: **Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.**

Manual Transmission



This is your shift pattern.

Here is how to operate the manual transmission:

1 (First): Press the clutch pedal and shift into 1 (First). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you slowly press down on the accelerator pedal.

You can shift into 1 (First) when you are going less than 30 km/h (20 mph). If you have come to a complete stop and it is hard to shift into 1 (First), put the shift lever in Neutral and let up on the clutch. Then press the clutch pedal back down and shift into 1 (First).

2 (Second): Press the clutch pedal as you let up on the accelerator pedal and shift into 2 (Second). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

3 (Third), 4 (Fourth) and 5 (Fifth): Shift into 3 (Third), 4 (Fourth) and 5 (Fifth) the same way you do for 2 (Second). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

To stop, let up on the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal. Just before the vehicle stops, press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal, and shift to Neutral.

Neutral: Use this position when you start or idle the engine.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

R (Reverse): To back up, press the clutch pedal. After the vehicle stops, shift into R (Reverse). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal. If it is hard to shift, let the shift lever return to Neutral and release the clutch pedal. Then press the clutch again and shift into R (Reverse). Do not attempt to shift into 5 (Fifth) prior to shifting into R (Reverse). The transmission has a lock out feature which prevents a 5 (Fifth) gear to R (Reverse) gear shift.

Notice: **Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.**

Use R (Reverse), along with the parking brake, for parking the vehicle.

Up-Shift Light

This light will show you when to shift to the next higher gear for best fuel economy.

When this light comes on, you can shift to the next higher gear if weather, road and traffic conditions permit. For the best fuel economy, accelerate slowly and shift when the light comes on.

While you accelerate, it is normal for the light to go on and off if you quickly change the position of the accelerator. Ignore the shift light when you downshift.

If the vehicle has four-wheel drive and has a manual transmission, disregard the shift light when the transfer case is in four-wheel low.

Shift Speeds

⚠ WARNING

If you skip a gear when you downshift, you could lose control of the vehicle. You could injure yourself or others. Do not shift down more than one gear at a time when you downshift.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive

If the vehicle has four-wheel drive, you can send the engine's driving power to all four wheels for extra traction. To get the best performance out of four-wheel drive, you must be familiar with its operation. Read this section before using four-wheel drive. You should use two-wheel drive high for most normal driving conditions.

Notice: **Driving on clean, dry pavement in four-wheel drive for an extended period of time can cause premature wear on the vehicle's powertrain. Do not drive on clean, dry pavement in Four-Wheel Drive for extended periods of time.**

Notice: **If the vehicle has four-wheel drive and the different size spare tire is installed on the vehicle, do not drive in four-wheel drive until you can have your flat tire repaired and/or replaced. You could damage the vehicle, and the repair costs would not be covered by your warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when the different size spare tire is installed on the vehicle.**

Notice: **If the vehicle has four-wheel drive and the compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle, do not drive in four-wheel drive until you can have the flat tire repaired and/or replaced. You could damage the vehicle, and the repair costs would not be covered by your warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when the compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.**

The transfer case buttons are located to the right of the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Recommended Transfer Case Settings

Driving Conditions	Transfer Case Settings			
	2↑	4↑	4↓	N
Normal	YES			
Severe		YES		
Extreme			YES	
Vehicle in Tow*				YES

*See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-88* or *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-87* for further information.

Shifting into Four-Wheel Low will turn Traction Control and StabiliTrak® off. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-46* and *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47* for more information.

Use these buttons to shift into and out of four-wheel drive. You can choose from the following:

2↑ (Two-Wheel High): This setting is for driving in most street and highway situations. The front axle is not engaged in two-wheel drive.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.

N (Neutral): Shift the vehicle's transfer case to N (Neutral) only when towing the vehicle.

4↑ (Four-Wheel High): This setting engages the front axle to help drive the vehicle. Use four-wheel high when you need extra traction, such as on snowy or icy roads, or in most off-road situations.

4↓ (Four-Wheel Low): This setting also engages the front axle to give you extra traction. It sends the maximum power to all four wheels.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

You might choose four-wheel low if you were driving off-road in sand, mud, or deep snow and while climbing or descending steep hills.

Shifting into Four-Wheel Low will turn Traction Control and StabiliTrak® off. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-46* and *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47* for more information.

Indicator lights in the buttons show you which setting you are in. The indicator lights will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition and one will stay on the selected setting. If the lights do not come on, you should take the vehicle in for service. An indicator light will flash while shifting. It will stay on when the shift is completed.

If the transfer case does not shift, it will return to the last chosen setting.

Shifting from Two-Wheel High to Four-Wheel High

Press and release the Four-Wheel High button. This can be done at any speed, and the front axle will lock automatically.

Shifting from Four-Wheel High to Two-Wheel High

Press and release the Two-Wheel High button. This can be done at any speed, and the front axle will unlock automatically.

It is normal to hear and feel the vehicle's transfer case shift into Four-Wheel High. If you shift with the vehicle stopped, the indicator light may still flash slowly. It may be necessary to shift the transmission momentarily into R (Reverse) and D (Drive), for an automatic transmission, or R (Reverse) and 1 (First) for a manual transmission to have the light stop flashing.

Shifting from Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High to Four-Wheel Low

To shift from Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High to Four-Wheel Low, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) with the transmission in N (Neutral) for an automatic transmission or the clutch pedal pressed for a manual transmission. The preferred method for shifting into Four-Wheel Low is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h (1 to 2 mph).

Press and release the Four-Wheel Low button. You must wait for the Four-Wheel Low indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal.

If the Four-Wheel Low button is pressed when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 5 km/h (3 mph), the Four-Wheel Low indicator light will flash for 30 seconds and not complete the shift.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting from Four-Wheel Low to Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High

To shift from Four-Wheel Low to Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h (3 mph) with the transmission in N (Neutral) for an automatic transmission or the clutch pedal pressed for a manual transmission. The preferred method for shifting out of Four-Wheel Low is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h (1 to 2 mph).

Press and release the Four-Wheel High or Two-Wheel High button. You must wait for the Four-Wheel High or Two-Wheel High indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal.

If the Four-Wheel High or Two-Wheel High button is pressed when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 5 km/h (3 mph), the Four-Wheel High or Two-Wheel High indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but not complete the shift.

Shifting to Neutral

Use N (Neutral) when you plan to tow the vehicle. See *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-88* for towing instructions. To shift the transfer case into N (Neutral) do the following:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Press the regular brake pedal and shift the transmission in N (Neutral), or press in the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission.
4. Shift the transfer case to Two-Wheel High.
5. Press and hold the Two-Wheel High and Four-Wheel Low buttons at the same time for 10 seconds. The N (Neutral) light will come on when the transfer case shift to N (Neutral) is complete.
6. Press and hold the regular brake pedal and shift the transmission to R (Reverse) for one second, then shift the transmission to D (Drive) for one second, or 1 (First) for vehicles with manual transmissions, and let out the clutch to insure the transfer case is in N (Neutral). If the transfer case is not in N (Neutral), repeat this procedure starting at Step 3.
7. Turn the engine off by turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY.
8. Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park), or 1 (First) for vehicles that have a manual transmission.
9. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Out of Neutral

After towing the vehicle, you will have to shift out of N (Neutral) in order to drive. To shift out of N (Neutral), do the following:

1. Set the parking brake and apply the regular brake pedal.
2. Start a vehicle with an automatic transmission in P (Park). Use 1 (First) for vehicles with a manual transmission.
3. Shift the transmission to N (Neutral), or press the clutch pedal for vehicles with a manual transmission.
4. Press the button for the desired transfer case shift position (Two-Wheel High, Four-Wheel High, or Four-Wheel Low).
5. After the transfer case has shifted out of N (Neutral), the indicator light will go out.
6. Release the parking brake.
7. Shift the transmission to the desired position.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has the Antilock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the engine is started and the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.

If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-16*.

If driving safely on a wet road and it becomes necessary to slam on the brakes and continue braking to avoid a sudden obstacle, a computer senses that the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help the driver steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

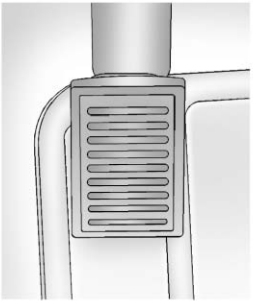
Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You might hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate, but this is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Parking Brake



The parking brake pedal is located to the left of the brake pedal, near the driver door.

To set the parking brake, hold the brake pedal down, then push the parking brake pedal down to its fully-applied position.

A chime will activate and the brake warning light, located on the instrument panel, will flash when the parking brake is applied and the vehicle is moving at least 5 km/h (3 mph) for at least three seconds. The chime will deactivate and the light will turn off when the parking brake is set and the vehicle is moving below 5 km/h (3 mph). See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-15*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down. Pull the bottom edge of the lever, located above the parking brake pedal, with the parking brake symbol, directly rearward to release the parking brake.

If the ignition is on when the parking brake is released, the brake system warning light will go off.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on any hill, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-56*.

Brake Assist

This vehicle has a brake assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. The brake assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

The Traction Control System (TCS) is part of StabiliTrak. TCS limits wheel slip which is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that any of the wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to limit wheel spin and also reduces engine power. The system may be heard or felt while it is working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

Notice: **If the wheel(s) of one axle is allowed to spin excessively while the StabiliTrak®, ABS, brake warning lights, and any relevant DIC messages are displayed, the transfer case could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights and messages are displayed.**

TCS can operate on dry roads under some conditions. When this happens, the system may be heard working or a reduction in acceleration may be noticed. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle. Examples of these conditions include hard acceleration in a turn, an abrupt upshift or downshift of the transmission or driving on rough roads.

If cruise control is being used when TCS begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control automatically disengages. The cruise control can be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-49*.

The message TRACTION FAULT appears in the Driver Information Center (DIC) when a TCS or Antilock Brake System (ABS) problem has been detected and the vehicle needs service. When this message is on, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-25*.

The StabiliTrak/TCS light will flash on the instrument panel cluster when the TCS system or StabiliTrak is both on and activated.

The StabiliTrak/TCS button is located on the instrument panel.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To turn off TCS, press and release the StabiliTrak/TCS button. The StabiliTrak/TCS light comes on in the instrument panel cluster, and TRAC OFF comes on the DIC. To turn TCS back on, press and release the StabiliTrak/TCS button.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect the vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-4*.

StabiliTrak® System

The vehicle has an electronic stability control system called StabiliTrak. It is an advanced computer controlled system that assists the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

StabiliTrak activates when the computer senses a discrepancy between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. StabiliTrak selectively applies braking pressure at any one of the vehicle's brakes to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

When the vehicle is started and begins to move, the system performs several diagnostic checks to insure there are no problems. The system may be heard or felt while it is working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle. The system should initialize before the vehicle reaches 32 km/h (20 mph). In some cases, it may take approximately two miles of driving before the system initializes.

If cruise control is being used when StabiliTrak activates, the cruise control automatically disengages. The cruise control can be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-49*.

If there is a problem detected with StabiliTrak, a SERVICE STAB SYS message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-25* for more information. When this message is displayed, the system is not working. Adjust your driving accordingly.

StabiliTrak and Traction Control (TCS) come on automatically whenever the vehicle is started and the systems are reset with each ignition cycle. However, when the transfer case is placed in Four-Wheel-Low mode, StabiliTrak is automatically disabled. See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-30* for more information. It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the TCS portion of the system off if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow, and it is

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

necessary to “rock” the vehicle to attempt to free it. If traction control is turned off, only the brake-traction control portion of traction control will work. The engine speed management will be disabled. In this mode, engine power is not reduced automatically and the drive wheels can spin more freely. This can cause the brake-traction control to activate constantly. See *If the Vehicle is Stuck on page 9-19*.

The StabiliTrak/TCS light will flash on the instrument panel cluster when the TCS system or StabiliTrak is both on and activated.

The StabiliTrak/TCS button is located on the instrument panel.

To turn off TCS, press and release the StabiliTrak/TCS button. The StabiliTrak/TCS light comes on in the instrument panel cluster, and TRAC OFF comes on the DIC. To turn TCS back on, press and release the StabiliTrak/TCS button.

To turn off TCS and StabiliTrak, press and hold the StabiliTrak/TCS button until the TRAC OFF and STAB SYS OFF messages come on the DIC and the StabiliTrak/TCS light comes on the instrument panel. To turn TCS and StabiliTrak back on, press and release the StabiliTrak/TCS button.

When the TCS or StabiliTrak system is turned off, the StabiliTrak/TCS light and the appropriate TRAC OFF or STAB SYS OFF message will be displayed on the DIC. The vehicle will still have brake-traction control when TCS or StabiliTrak is off, but will not be able to use the engine speed management system. The StabiliTrak/TCS light flashes when either system is actively working. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-46* for more information.

Limited-Slip Rear Axle

Vehicles with a limited-slip rear axle can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand or gravel. It works like a standard axle most of the time, but when traction is low, this feature allows the drive wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cruise Control

With cruise control, a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph).

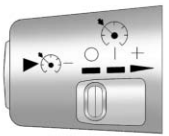
If the brakes are applied, the cruise control shuts off.

⚠ WARNING

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

If the vehicle's StabiliTrak® /Traction Control System (TCS) begins to limit wheel spin while the cruise control is on, the cruise control automatically disengages. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 9-47* or *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-46*. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, the cruise control can be turned back on.



These controls are located at the end of the multifunction lever.

○ **(Off):** Turns the system off.

| **(On):** Turns the system on.

+ (Resume/Accelerate): Use to make the vehicle accelerate or resume a previously set speed.

▶ **(Set):** Press the button at the end of the lever to set the speed.

Setting Cruise Control

If the cruise button is on when not in use, it could get bumped and go into cruise when not desired. Keep the cruise control switch off when cruise is not being used.

1. Move the cruise control lever to |.
2. Get up to the speed desired.
3. Press ▶ at the end of the lever and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

This light on the instrument panel cluster comes on while the cruise control is on.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, move the cruise control lever briefly from | to +. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed and stays there.

If the lever is held at resume/accelerate the vehicle keeps going faster until the lever is released or the brake is applied. Do not hold the lever at resume/accelerate, unless you want the vehicle to go faster.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated,

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the higher speed. Press ▶ at the end of the lever, then release the button and the accelerator pedal. If the accelerator pedal is held longer than 60 seconds, cruise control will turn off.
- Move the cruise lever from | to +. Hold it until the desired speed is reached, and then release the lever.
- To increase the vehicle speed in small amounts, move the lever briefly to +.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated,

- Press and hold ▶ until the lower speed desired is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in small amounts, briefly press ▶ .

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previous set cruise control speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control works on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills,

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down. When the brakes are applied the cruise control is disengaged.

Ending Cruise Control

There are two ways to end cruise control:

- To disengage cruise control; step lightly on the brake pedal or lightly tap or press the clutch, for manual transmissions.
- To turn off the cruise control, move the cruise control lever to ◯ .

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory by moving the cruise control lever to ◯ or if the vehicle is turned off.

Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle. To help keep the engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, we recommend the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

Look for the TOP TIER label on the fuel pump to ensure gasoline meets enhanced detergency standards developed by auto companies. A list of marketers providing TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found at www.toptiergas.com.

TOP TIER™
Detergent Gasoline

CATEGORIE SUPERIEURE™
Essences Détergentes

Recommended Fuel

Use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. If the octane rating is less than 87, an audible knocking noise, commonly referred to as spark knock, might be heard when driving. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, the engine needs service.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Gasoline Specifications (U.S. and Canada Only)

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 or 3.511 in Canada. Some gasolines contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). We recommend against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Fuel Additives on page 9-53* for additional information.

California Fuel Requirements

If the vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California Emissions Standards, the vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance might be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and the vehicle might fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-12*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Fuels in Foreign Countries

Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing the emission control system to work properly. In most cases, nothing should have to be added to the fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean and avoid problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Look for the TOP TIER label on the fuel pump to ensure gasoline meets enhanced detergency standards developed by the auto companies. A list of marketers providing TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found at www.toptiergas.com.

For customers who do not use TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline regularly, one bottle of GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS, added to the fuel tank at every engine oil change, can help clean deposits from fuel injectors and intake valves. GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS is the only gasoline additive recommended by General Motors. It is available at your dealer.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines might be available in your area. We recommend that you use these gasolines, if they comply with the specifications described earlier. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

Notice: **This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.**

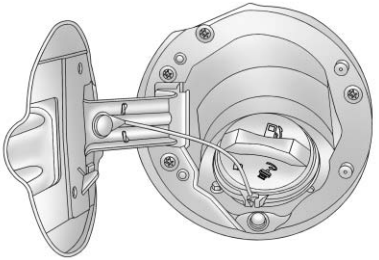
Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer for service.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Filling the Tank

⚠ WARNING

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island. Turn off the engine when refueling. Do not smoke near fuel or when refueling the vehicle. Do not use cellular phones. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling the vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.



The tethered fuel cap is located behind a hinged fuel door on the driver side of the vehicle.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise.

While refueling, hang the tethered fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door.

⚠ WARNING

Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care on page 10-93*.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. If the fuel cap is not properly installed, the FUEL CAP message appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC) and the check engine light will be lit on the instrument panel cluster. See *Fuel System Messages on page 5-25* and *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-12* for more information.

⚠ WARNING

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Notice: **If a new fuel cap is needed, be sure to get the right type of cap from your dealer. The wrong type of fuel cap might not fit properly, might cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light, and could damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-12*.**

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ WARNING

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned and the vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.
- Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing

General Towing Information

Only use towing equipment that has been designed for the vehicle. Contact your dealer or trailering dealer for assistance with preparing the vehicle for towing a trailer.

See the following trailer towing information in this section:

- For information on driving while towing a trailer, see “Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips.”
- For maximum vehicle and trailer weights, see “Trailer Towing.”
- For information on equipment to tow a trailer, see “Towing Equipment.”

For information on towing a disabled vehicle, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-87*. For information on towing the vehicle behind another vehicle such as a motor home, see *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-88*.

Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips

Pulling A Trailer

Here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure the rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you will be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control. See “Hitches” in *Towing Equipment on page 9-66*.
- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 800 km (500 miles) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 800 km (500 miles) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- Vehicles with automatic transmissions can tow in D (Drive), but you may want to shift to a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g., under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions). If the vehicle has a manual transmission it is better not to use the highest gear.

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- The weight of the trailer
- The weight of the trailer tongue
- The weight on the vehicle's tires

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving with a Trailer

⚠ WARNING

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window is open.

Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

To maximize safety when towing a trailer:

- Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks and make necessary repairs before starting a trip.
- Never drive with the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window open.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.

For more information about Carbon Monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-33*.

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Get to know the rig before setting out for the open road. Get acquainted with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not as responsive as the vehicle is by itself.

Before starting, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires and mirror adjustments. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This checks the electrical connection at the same time.

During the trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

While towing a trailer or when exposed to long periods of sunshine, the floor of the truck bed may become very warm. Avoid putting items in the truck bed that might be affected by high ambient temperatures.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. Because the rig is longer, it is necessary to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Notice: **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so the trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

The arrows on the instrument panel flash whenever signaling a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps also flash, telling other drivers the vehicle is turning, changing lanes or stopping.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on the instrument panel flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. For this reason you may think other drivers are seeing the signal when they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving On Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* starting down a long or steep downgrade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might have to be used so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

Vehicles with automatic transmissions can tow in D (Drive), but you may want to shift to a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g., under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions). If the vehicle has a manual transmission it is better not to use the highest gear.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, the vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked, preferably on level ground, with an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in N (Neutral) with the parking brake applied, for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-23*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ WARNING

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet for vehicles with an automatic transmission, or into gear for vehicles with a manual transmission. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the brake pedal until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park) for vehicles with an automatic transmission or into gear for vehicles with a manual transmission.
5. If the vehicle has four-wheel-drive, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear and not in N (Neutral). See *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-30* for more information.
6. Release the brake pedal.

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal while you:
   - Start the engine
   - Shift into a gear
   - Release the parking brake
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance When Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* or the Index for more information. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system and brake system. It is a good idea to inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Trailer Towing

⚠ WARNING

The driver can lose control when pulling a trailer if the correct equipment is not used or the vehicle is not driven properly. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. The driver and passengers could be seriously injured. The vehicle may also be damaged; the resulting repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Pull a trailer only if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

Notice: **Pulling a trailer improperly can damage the vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section and see your dealer for important information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.**

To identify the trailering capacity of the vehicle, read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section.

Trailering is different than just driving the vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The following information has many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how the rig is used. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry.

See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” later in this section for more information.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Use the following chart to determine how much the vehicle can weigh, based upon the vehicle model and options.

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
2WD Regular Cab			
2.9L L4 Automatic Transmission	3.73	1 542 kg (3,400 lbs)	3 175 kg (7,000 lbs)
2.9L L4 Manual Transmission	3.73	1 089 kg (2,400 lbs)	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)
3.7L L5 Automatic Transmission	3.73	1 814 kg (4,000 lbs)	3 856 kg (8,500 lbs)
2WD Extended Cab			
2.9L L4 Automatic Transmission	3.73	1 452 kg (3,200 lbs)	3 175 kg (7,000 lbs)
2.9L L4 Manual Transmission	3.73	998 kg (2,200 lbs)	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)
3.7L L5 Automatic Transmission	3.73	2 495 kg (5,500 lbs)	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 Automatic Transmission	3.42 3.73	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)	4 717 kg (10,400 lbs)
5.3L V8 Automatic Transmission, ZQ8 Sport Suspension	3.42	1 814 kg (4,000 lbs)	3 856 kg (8,500 lbs)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
2WD Crew Cab			
2.9L L4 Automatic Transmission	3.73	1 361 kg (3,000 lbs)	3 175 kg (7,000 lbs)
2.9L L4 Manual Transmission	3.73	953 kg (2,100 lbs)	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)
3.7L L5 Automatic Transmission	3.73	2 495 kg (5,500 lbs)	4 309 kg (9,500 lbs)
5.3L V8 Automatic Transmission	3.42 3.73	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)	4 717 kg (10,400 lbs)
5.3L V8 Automatic Transmission, ZQ8 Sport Suspension	3.42	1 724 kg (3,800 lbs)	3 856 kg (8,500 lbs)
4WD Regular Cab			
2.9L L4 Automatic Transmission	3.73	1 406 kg (3,100 lbs)	3 175 kg (7,000 lbs)
2.9L L4 Manual Transmission	3.73	953 kg (2,100 lbs)	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)
3.7L L5 Automatic Transmission	3.73	1 814 kg (4,000 lbs)	4 082 kg (9,000 lbs)
4WD Extended Cab			
2.9L L4 Automatic Transmission	3.73	1 315 kg (2,900 lbs)	3 175 kg (7,000 lbs)
2.9L L4 Manual Transmission	3.73	861 kg (1,900 lbs)	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)
3.7L L5 Automatic Transmission	3.73	2 495 kg (5,500 lbs)	4 445 kg (9,800 lbs)
5.3L V8 Automatic Transmission	3.42 4.10	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)	4 717 kg (10,400 lbs)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Maximum Trailer Weight	GCWR*
4WD Crew Cab			
3.7L L5 Automatic Transmission	3.73	2 495 kg (5,500 lbs)	4 445 kg (9,800 lbs)
5.3L V8 Automatic Transmission	3.42 4.10	2 722 kg (6,000 lbs)	4 717 kg (10,400 lbs)
*The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any passengers, cargo, equipment and conversions. The GCWR for the vehicle should not be exceeded.			

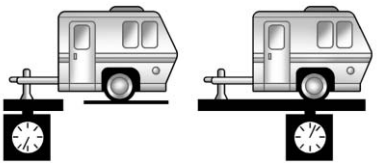
Ask your dealer for our trailering information or advice, or write us at our Customer Assistance Offices. See *Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-4* or *Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) on page 13-5* for more information.

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross weight of the vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle.

If there are a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. If towing a trailer, the tongue load must be added to the GVW because the vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20* for more information about the vehicle's maximum load capacity.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



The trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 percent to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight, up to a maximum of 226 kg (500 lbs) with a weight carrying hitch.

Do not exceed the maximum allowable tongue weight for the vehicle. Choose the shortest hitch extension that will position the hitch ball closest to the vehicle. This will help reduce the effect of trailer tongue weight on the rear axle.

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

Trailering may be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight. Tongue weight cannot cause the vehicle to exceed the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) or the RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating). The effect of additional weight may reduce the trailering capacity more than the total of the additional weight.

It is important that the vehicle does not exceed any of its ratings — GCWR, GVWR, RGAWR, Maximum Trailer Rating or Tongue Weight. The only way to be sure it is not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh the vehicle and trailer.

Total Weight on the Vehicle's Tires

Be sure the vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. These numbers can be found on the Certification/Tire label located at the bottom of the center pillar on the driver's side of the vehicle, or see *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*. Make sure not to go over the GVW limit for the vehicle, or the GAWR, including the weight of the trailer tongue. If using a weight distributing hitch, make sure not to go over the rear axle limit before applying the weight distribution spring bars.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing Equipment

Hitches

It is important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why the right hitch is needed.

Weight-Distributing Hitches and Weight Carrying Hitches

A step bumper hitch can be used for trailers up to 907 kg (2,000 lbs) total weight, and 90 kg (200 lbs) tongue weight.

Notice: **If a step-bumper hitch is used, the bumper could be damaged in sharp turns. Make sure there is ample room when turning to avoid contact between the trailer and the bumper.**

Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. For trailers up to 907 kg (2,000 lbs) safety chains may be attached to the attaching points on the bumper. For heavier trailers, follow the trailer or hitch manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so the rig can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

A loaded trailer that weighs more than 450 kg (1,000 lbs) needs to have its own brake system that is adequate for the weight of the trailer. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so they are installed, adjusted and maintained properly.

Since the vehicle is equipped with StabiliTrak®, the trailer cannot tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system.

Trailer Wiring Harness

The vehicle may be equipped with a four-pin trailer towing harness. This harness has a four-pin trailer connector that is attached to a bracket on the hitch platform. The four-wire harness contains the following trailer circuits:

- Yellow: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- Green: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Brown: Taillamps/Park lamps
- White: Ground

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Notice: **Do not add anything electrical to the vehicle unless you check with your dealer first. Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-38* and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-39*.

Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab

We are aware that some vehicle owners might consider having the pickup box removed and a commercial or recreational body installed. However, we recommend that conversions of this type not be done to pickups. Owners should be aware that, as manufactured, there are differences between a chassis cab and a pickup with the box removed which could affect vehicle safety.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

✍ NOTES

Information Provided by
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Care

General Information

General Information 10-3
California Proposition 65 Warning 10-3
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 10-3
Accessories and Modifications 10-4

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work 10-4
Hood 10-5
Engine Compartment Overview 10-6
Engine Oil 10-9
Engine Oil Life System 10-12
Automatic Transmission Fluid 10-13
Manual Transmission Fluid 10-16
Hydraulic Clutch 10-17
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 10-17
Cooling System 10-18
Engine Coolant 10-19
Engine Overheating 10-23
Engine Fan 10-25
Power Steering Fluid 10-25
Washer Fluid 10-26
Brakes 10-26
Brake Fluid 10-28
Battery 10-29
Four-Wheel Drive 10-30
Front Axle 10-30
Rear Axle 10-31
Starter Switch Check 10-31
Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check 10-32
Ignition Transmission Lock Check 10-32
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 10-33
Wiper Blade Replacement 10-33

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp Aiming 10-35

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement 10-35
Halogen Bulbs 10-35
Headlamps 10-35
Front Turn Signal, Parking, and Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 10-36
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps 10-37
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) 10-38
License Plate Lamp 10-38
Replacement Bulbs 10-38

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Electrical System
Electrical System Overload 10-39
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 10-40
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-40

Wheels and Tires
Tires 10-46
Tire Sidewall Labeling 10-46
Tire Designations 10-49
Tire Terminology and Definitions 10-49
Tire Pressure 10-52
Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation 10-54
Tire Pressure Monitor System 10-54
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 10-55
Tire Inspection 10-59
Tire Rotation 10-59
When It Is Time for New Tires 10-61
Buying New Tires 10-61
Different Size Tires and Wheels 10-63
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 10-63
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 10-65
Wheel Replacement 10-65
Tire Chains 10-66
If a Tire Goes Flat 10-67
Tire Changing 10-68
Secondary Latch System . . . 10-79
Compact Spare Tire 10-82
Full-Size Spare Tire 10-83

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 10-84

Towing
Towing the Vehicle 10-87
Recreational Vehicle Towing 10-88

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 10-93
Interior Care 10-97
Floor Mats 10-100

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems, many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in Remote Keyless Entry transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. Your GM dealer can accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories. When you go to your GM dealer and ask for GM Accessories, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM Accessories.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-39*.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ WARNING

You can be injured and the vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before attempting any vehicle maintenance task.
- Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. Metric and English fasteners can be easily confused. If the wrong fasteners are used, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 13-13*.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-38*.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed. See *Maintenance Records on page 11-10*.

Hood

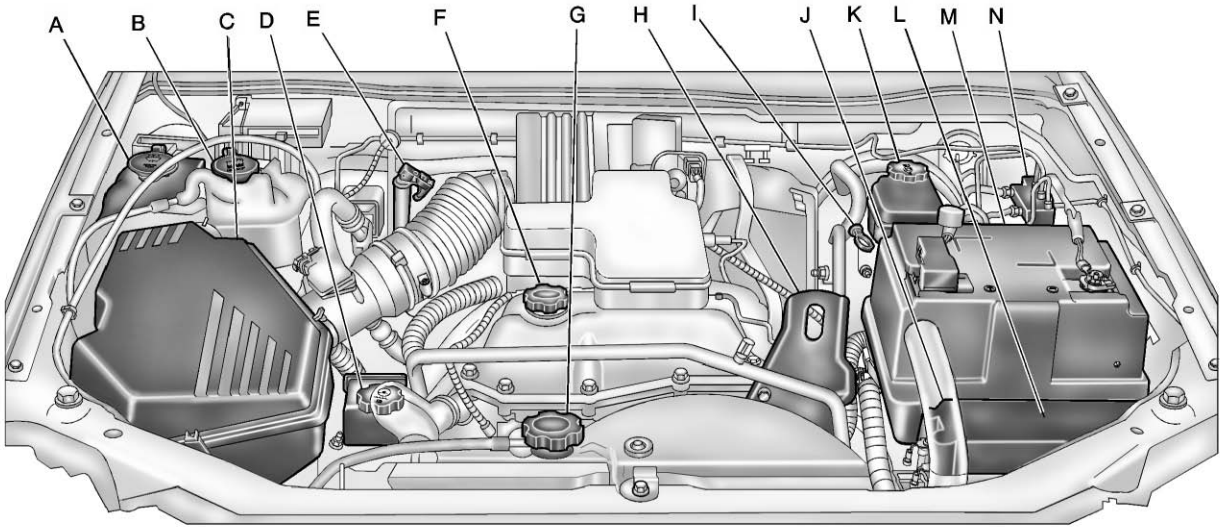
To open the hood, do the following:

1. Pull the handle with this symbol on it. It is located inside the vehicle on the lower left side of the instrument panel.
2. Release the secondary latch on the hood. It is located below the front center of the hood.
3. Lift the hood.
4. Release the hood prop from its retainer and put the hood prop into the slot in the hood.

Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then lift the hood to relieve pressure on the hood prop. Remove the hood prop from the slot in the hood and return the prop to its retainer. Lower the hood 25 to 30 cm (10 to 12 in) above the vehicle and release it to latch fully. Check to make sure the hood is closed and repeat the procedure if necessary.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Compartment Overview



3.7 L L5 Engine Shown (2.9 L L4 Engine Similar)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A. Windshield Washer Fluid. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Washer Fluid on page 10-26*.

B. Engine Coolant Recovery Tank. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-19*.

C. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-17*.

D. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir (low in engine compartment). See *Power Steering Fluid on page 10-25*.

E. Automatic Transmission Fluid Dipstick (If Equipped). See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 10-13*.

F. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

G. Radiator Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 10-18*.

H. Remote Negative (−) Terminal (GND). See *Jump Starting on page 10-84*.

I. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

J. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 10-84*.

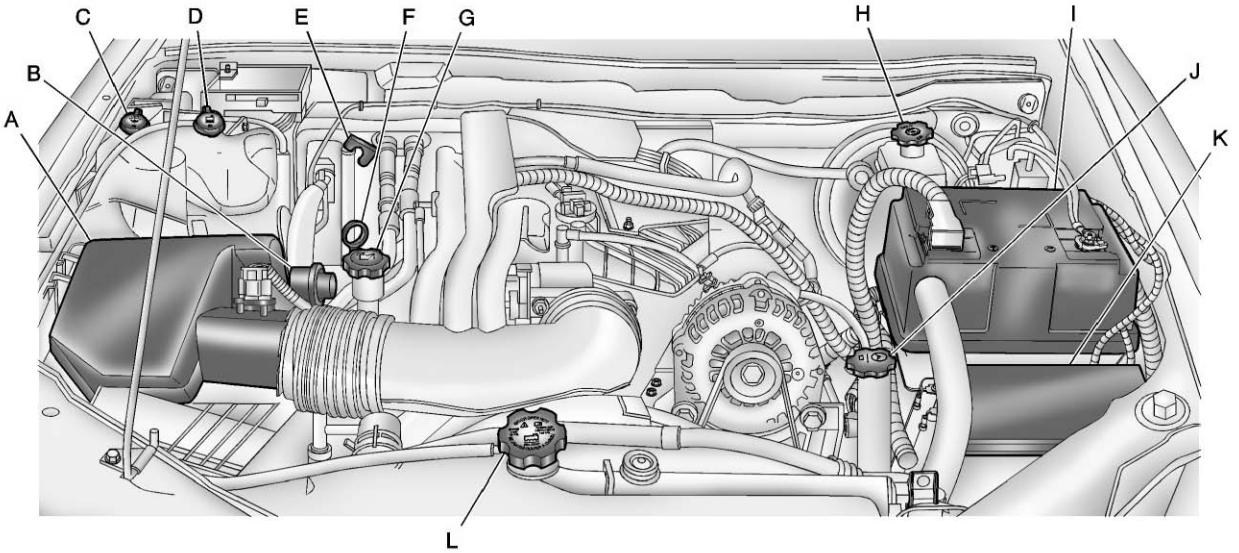
K. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid on page 10-28*.

L. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-40*.

M. *Battery on page 10-29*.

N. Hydraulic Clutch Fluid Reservoir (If Equipped). See *Hydraulic Clutch on page 10-17*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



5.3 L V8 Engine

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-17*.

B. Air Filter Restriction Indicator (If Equipped). See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-17*.

C. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Washer Fluid on page 10-26*.

D. Engine Coolant Recovery Tank. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-19*.

E. Automatic Transmission Fluid Dipstick (If Equipped). See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 10-13*.

F. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

G. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.

H. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid on page 10-28*.

I. *Battery on page 10-29*.

J. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir. See *Power Steering Fluid on page 10-25*.

K. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-40*.

L. Radiator Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 10-18*.

Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Always use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

Obtaining an accurate oil level reading is essential:

1. If the engine has been running recently, turn off the engine and allow several minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan. Checking the oil level too soon after engine shutoff will not provide an accurate oil level reading.

Information Provided by DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

When to Add Engine Oil

L4 and L5 Engines

V8 Engine

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See "Selecting the Right Engine Oil" in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

Notice: **Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.**

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade:

Specification

Use and ask for engine oils with the dexos™ certification mark. Oils meeting the requirements of the vehicle should have the dexos certification mark on the container. This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos specification.

This vehicle was filled at the factory with dexos-approved engine oil.

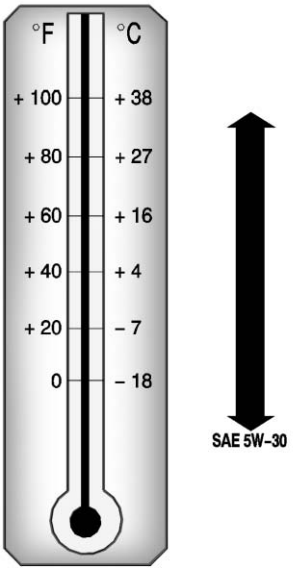
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Use only engine oil that is approved to the dexos specification or an equivalent engine oil of the appropriate viscosity grade. Engine oils approved to the dexos specification will show the dexos symbol on the container. Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are unsure whether the oil is approved to the dexos specification, ask your service provider.**

Use of Substitute Engine Oils if dexos is unavailable: In the event that dexos-approved engine oil is not available at an oil change or for maintaining proper oil level, you may use substitute engine oil displaying the API Starburst symbol and of SAE 5W-30 viscosity grade. Use of oils that do not meet the dexos specification, however, may result in reduced performance under certain circumstances.

Viscosity Grade

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.



Cold Temperature Operation: In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below −29°C

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

(−20°F), an SAE 0W-30 oil should be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, be sure to always select an oil that meets the required specification, dexos. See “Specification” earlier in this section for more information.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the dexos specification and displaying the dexos certification mark are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE OIL message comes on. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-24*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km (3,000 mi) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. To reset the system:

1. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN, with the engine off .
2. Press and release the stem in the lower center of the instrument cluster until the OIL LIFE message is displayed.
3. Once the alternating OIL LIFE and RESET messages appear, press and hold the stem until several beeps sound. This confirms that the oil life system has been reset.
4. Turn the key to LOCK/OFF.

If the CHANGE OIL message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

When to Check and Change Automatic Transmission Fluid

A good time to check the automatic transmission fluid level is when the engine oil is changed.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*, and be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

Because this operation can be a little difficult, it may be decided to have this done at the dealer service department.

If not taken to the dealer, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or a false reading on the dipstick could result.

Notice: **Too much or too little fluid can damage the transmission. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine parts or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if checking the transmission fluid.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transmission fluid level if the vehicle has been driven:

- When outside temperatures are above 32°C (90°F).
- At high speed for quite a while.
- In heavy traffic — especially in hot weather.
- While pulling a trailer.

To get the right reading, the fluid should be at normal operating temperature, which is 82°C to 93°C (180°F to 200°F).

Get the vehicle warmed up by driving about 24 km (15 mi) when outside temperatures are above 10°C (50°F). If it is colder than 10°C (50°F), drive the vehicle in 3 (Third) until the engine temperature gauge moves and then remains steady for 10 minutes.

A cold fluid check can be made after the vehicle has been sitting for eight hours or more with the engine off, but this is used only as a reference. Let the engine run at idle for five minutes if outside temperatures are 10°C (50°F) or more. If it is colder than 10°C (50°F), the engine may have to idle longer. Should the fluid level be low during this cold check, check the fluid hot before adding fluid. Checking the fluid hot gives a more accurate reading of the fluid level.

Checking the Fluid Level

To prepare the vehicle:

1. Park the vehicle on a level place. Keep the engine running.
2. With the parking brake applied, place the shift lever in P (Park).
3. With foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, position the shift lever in P (Park).
4. Let the engine run at idle for three minutes or more.

Then, without shutting off the engine:

1. Flip the handle up and then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.

The automatic transmission dipstick handle with this symbol on it is located in the engine compartment on the passenger side of the vehicle.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information on location.

2. Push it back in all the way, wait three seconds, and pull it back out again.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Check both sides of the dipstick, and read the lower level. The fluid level must be in the COLD area, below the cross-hatched area, for a cold check or in the HOT or cross-hatched area for a hot check. Be sure to keep the dipstick pointed down to get an accurate reading.
4. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

How to Add Automatic Transmission Fluid

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of transmission fluid to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.

Add fluid only after checking the transmission fluid while it is hot. A cold check is used only as a reference. If the fluid level is low, add only enough of the proper fluid to bring the level up to the HOT area for a hot check. It does not take much fluid, generally less than 0.5 L (1 pt). Do not overfill.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.**

- After adding fluid, recheck the fluid level as described under “How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid,” earlier in this section.
- When the correct fluid level is obtained, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual Transmission Fluid

When to Check

A good time to check the manual transmission fluid is when the engine oil is changed. However, the fluid in the manual transmission does not require changing.

How to Check

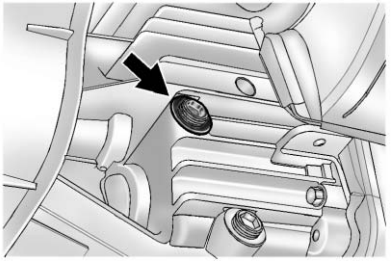
Because this operation can be a little difficult, it may be decided to have this done at the dealer service department.

If not taken to the dealer, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or a false reading on the dipstick could result.

Notice: **Too much or too little fluid can damage the transmission. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if checking the transmission fluid.**

Check the fluid level only when the engine is off, the vehicle is parked on a level place and the transmission is cool enough to touch the transmission case.

After this is done:



1. Remove the fill plug.
2. Check that the lubricant level is up to the bottom of the fill plug hole.
3. If the fluid level is good, install the plug and be sure it is fully seated. If the fluid level is low, add more fluid as described in the next steps.

How to Add Fluid

Here is how to add fluid. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of fluid to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.

1. Remove the fill plug.
2. Add fluid at the fill plug hole. Add only enough fluid to bring the fluid level up to the bottom of the fill plug hole.
3. Install the fill plug. Be sure the plug is fully seated.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Hydraulic Clutch

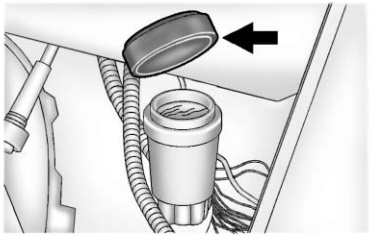
The hydraulic clutch linkage in the vehicle is self-adjusting. The clutch master cylinder reservoir is filled with hydraulic clutch fluid.

The hydraulic clutch fluid reservoir cap has this symbol on it. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for reservoir location.

It is not necessary to regularly check clutch fluid unless a leak in the system is suspected. Adding fluid will not correct a leak.

A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

When to Check and What to Use

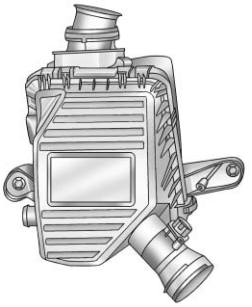


Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the fluid level in the clutch master cylinder reservoir and for the proper fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.

How to Check and Add Fluid

The proper fluid should be added if the level does not reach the bottom of the diaphragm when it is in place in the reservoir. See the instructions on the reservoir cap.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



The engine air cleaner/filter is located in the engine compartment on the passenger side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information on location.

Powered by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 80 000 km (50,000 mi) interval. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* for more information. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

To inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter, do the following:

1. Unfasten the clips that hold the cover on and remove the cover.
2. Lift out the engine air cleaner/filter.
3. Inspect or replace the air filter. See *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 11-9* to determine which filter to use.
4. Reinstall the engine air cleaner/filter cover. Fasten the clips to hold the cover in place.

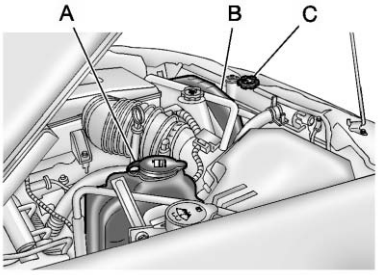
⚠ WARNING

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. Use caution when working on the engine and do not drive with the air cleaner/filter off.

Notice: **If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.**

Cooling System

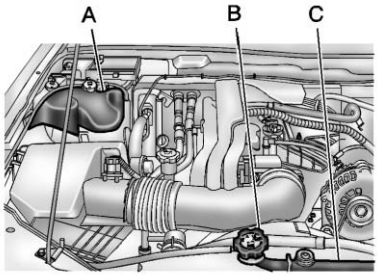
The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



2.9 L L4 Engine Shown (3.7 L L5 Engine Similar)

A. Coolant Recovery Tank
B. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)
C. Radiator Pressure Cap

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



5.3 L V8 Engine

A. Coolant Recovery Tank
B. Radiator Pressure Cap
C. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)

⚠ WARNING

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ WARNING

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner, at 50 000 km (30,000 mi) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.**

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in the vehicle for 5 years or 240 000 km (150,000 mi), whichever occurs first.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-23*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

What to Use

⚠ WARNING

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to −37°C (−34°F), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 129°C (265°F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminum parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

Notice: **If an improper coolant mixture is used, the engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.**

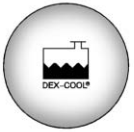
Notice: **If extra inhibitors and/or additives are used in the vehicle cooling system, the vehicle could be damaged. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6* for more information.**

Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorized service center, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.



The coolant recovery tank cap has this symbol on it.

It is located toward the rear of the engine compartment on the passenger side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information on location.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant recovery tank. If the coolant inside the coolant recovery tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the FULL COLD mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant recovery tank, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be at FULL COLD, or a little higher. When the engine is warm, the level could be above the FULL COLD level.

When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be at least up to the FULL COLD mark. If it is not, there could be a leak in the cooling system.

How to Add Coolant to the Recovery Tank

⚠ WARNING

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

Notice: **This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.**

When the coolant in the coolant recovery tank is at the FULL COLD mark, start the vehicle.

If coolant is needed, add the proper DEX-COOL coolant mixture at the coolant recovery tank.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Add Coolant to the Radiator

⚠ WARNING

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ WARNING

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

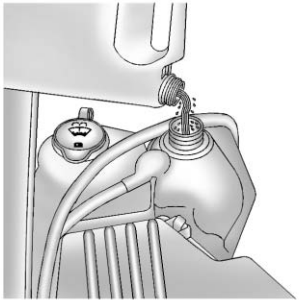
cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

If coolant is needed, add the proper mixture directly to the radiator, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.

1. Remove the radiator pressure cap when the cooling system, including the upper radiator hose, is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise about one full turn.

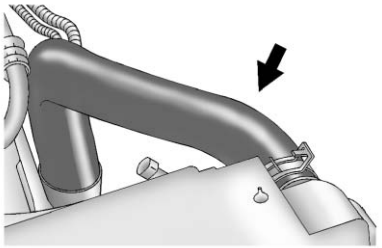
   If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.

2. Keep turning the cap to remove it.
3. Fill the radiator with the proper DEX-COOL coolant mixture, up to the base of the filler neck. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-19* for more information about the proper coolant mixture.



4. Fill the coolant recovery tank to the FULL COLD mark.
5. Reinstall the cap on the coolant recovery tank, but leave the radiator pressure cap off.

Powered by: DEALER E-PROCESS



6. Start the engine and let it run until the upper radiator hose can be felt getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.
7. By this time, the coolant level inside the radiator filler neck might be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper DEX-COOL coolant mixture through the filler neck until the level reaches the base of the filler neck.
8. Replace the pressure cap.

At any time during this procedure if coolant begins to flow out of the filler neck, reinstall the pressure cap.

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has a coolant temperature gauge displayed on the instrument panel to warn if the engine is overheating. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge on page 5-9*. If the engine is too hot, the air conditioning might stop working. This is normal and helps cool the engine.

If the decision is made not to lift the hood when the warning appears, but instead get service help right away. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-9*.

If the decision is made to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine and have the vehicle serviced.

The engine cooling fan speed should increase when idle speed is doubled by pushing the accelerator pedal down. If it does not, the vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

Notice: **Engine damage from running the engine without coolant is not covered by the warranty.**

Notice: **If the engine catches fire because of being driven with no coolant, the vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ WARNING

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when the engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop the engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer. See “Driving on Grades” under *Trailer Towing on page 9-60*.

If the overheat warning is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. In heavy traffic, let the engine idle in N (Neutral) while stopped. If it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral) and let the engine idle.

If the temperature overheat gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat warning no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the vehicle in front. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Fan

This vehicle has a clutched engine cooling fan. When the clutch is engaged, the fan spins faster to provide more air to cool the engine. In most everyday driving conditions, the clutch is not engaged. This improves fuel economy and reduces fan noise. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing and/or high outside temperatures, the fan speed increases when the clutch engages. So you may hear an increase in fan noise. This is normal and should not be mistaken as the transmission slipping or making extra shifts. It is merely the cooling system functioning properly. The fan will slow down when additional cooling is not required and the clutch disengages.

This fan noise may also be heard when the engine is started. It will go away as the fan clutch disengages.

Power Steering Fluid

The power steering fluid reservoir is located near the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for reservoir location.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless there is a leak suspected in the system or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Then remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be between the ADD and FULL marks. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level up to the proper range.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*. Always use the proper fluid.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the correct fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.**

Washer Fluid

What to Use

When windshield washer fluid is needed, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If operating the vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid

Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for reservoir location.

Notice

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windshield washer. It can damage the windshield washer system and paint.**

Brakes

This vehicle has front disc brakes and rear drum brakes.

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

Rear drum brakes do not have wear indicators, but if a rear brake rubbing noise is heard, have the rear brake linings inspected immediately. Rear brake drums should be removed and inspected each time the tires are removed for rotation or changing. Drum brakes have an inspection hole to inspect lining wear during scheduled maintenance. When the front brake pads are replaced, have the rear brakes inspected, too.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced, be sure to get new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, installing disc brake pads that are wrong for the vehicle, can change the balance between the front and rear brakes — for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake Fluid

The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

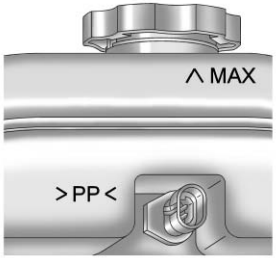
⚠ WARNING

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system. See “Checking Brake Fluid” in this section.

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to check the brake fluid. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*.

Checking Brake Fluid

Check brake fluid by looking at the brake fluid reservoir. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6*.



The fluid level should be above the PP mark. If it is not, have the brake hydraulic system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake hydraulic system, make sure the level is above the PP mark but not over the MAX mark.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

What to Add

Use only new DOT 3 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

Notice

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately.**

Battery

Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for battery location.

⚠ DANGER

Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

⚠ WARNING

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 10-84* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (−) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (−) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

Four-Wheel Drive

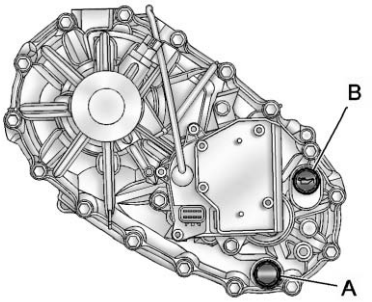
Transfer Case

When to Check Lubricant

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the lubricant. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*.

How to Check Lubricant

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.



A. Drain Plug

B. Fill Plug

If the level is below the bottom of the fill plug hole, located on the transfer case, some lubricant will need to be added. Remove the plug and add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the fill plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the plug.

What to Use

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.

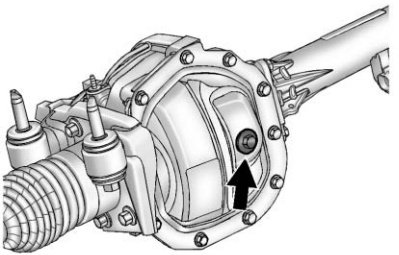
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front Axle

When to Check and Change Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check the front axle fluid unless there is a leak suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the front axle, some lubricant may need to be added.

When the differential is cold, add enough lubricant to raise the level to 12 mm (1/2 in) below the fill plug hole.

When the differential is at operating temperature (warm), add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the fill plug hole.

What to Use

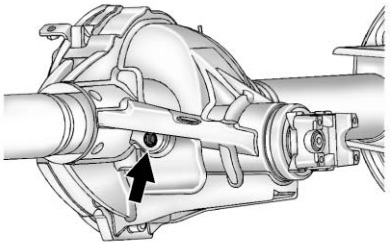
See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.

Rear Axle

When to Check and Change Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check rear axle fluid unless there is a leak suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

The proper level is from 0 mm to 10 mm (0 to 3/8 in) below the bottom of the fill plug hole, located on the rear axle.

What to Use

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6* to determine which kind of lubricant to use.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Starter Switch Check

⚠ WARNING

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.

3. For automatic transmission vehicles, try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer for service.

   For manual transmission vehicles, put the shift lever in Neutral, push the clutch pedal down halfway, and try to start the engine. The vehicle should start only when the clutch pedal is pushed down all the way to the floor. If the vehicle starts when the clutch pedal is not pushed all the way down, contact your dealer for service.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check

⚠ WARNING

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition on, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer for service.

Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF in each shift lever position.

- For automatic transmission vehicles, the ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when the shift lever is in P (Park).
- For manual transmission vehicles, the ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when you press the key release button.

On all vehicles, the ignition key should come out only in LOCK/OFF.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ WARNING

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

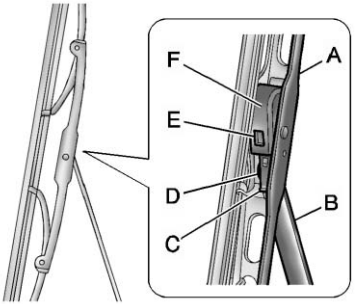
Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear and cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2* for more information.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 11-9*.

Allowing the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windshield. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not allow the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield.

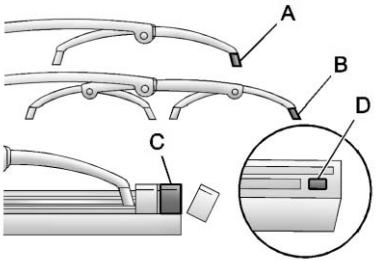
1. To remove the old wiper blades, lift the wiper arm until it locks into a vertical position.



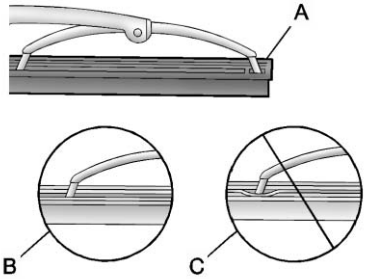
A. Blade Assembly
B. Arm Assembly
C. Locking Tab
D. Blade Pivot
E. Hook Slot
F. Arm Hook

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Press down on the blade assembly pivot locking tab. Pull down on the blade assembly to release it from the wiper arm hook.
3. Remove the insert from the blade assembly. The insert has two notches at one end that are locked by bottom claws of the blade assembly. At the notched end, pull the insert from the blade assembly.



4. To install the new wiper insert, slide the insert (D), notched end last, into the end with two blade claws (A). Slide the insert all the way through the blade claws at the opposite end (B). The plastic caps (C) will be forced off as the insert is fully inserted.
5. Be sure that the notches are locked by the bottom claws. Make sure that all other claws are properly locked on both sides of the insert slots.



A. Claw in Notch
B. Correct Installation
C. Incorrect Installation

6. Put the blade assembly pivot in the wiper arm hook. Pull up until the pivot locking tab locks in the hook slot.
7. Carefully lower the wiper arm and blade assembly onto the windshield.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset at the factory and should need no further adjustment.

However, if the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. Aim adjustment to the low-beam headlamps may be necessary if oncoming drivers flash their high-beam headlamps at you (for vertical aim).

If the headlamps need to be re-aimed, it is recommended that the vehicle be taken to the dealer for service.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 10-38*.

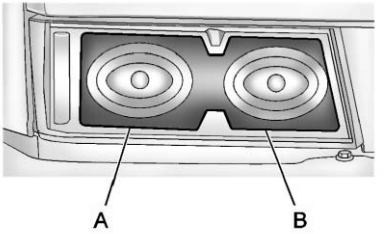
For any bulb-changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ WARNING

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

Headlamps



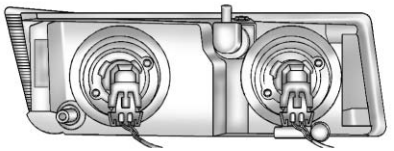
A. Low-Beam Headlamp/Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

B. High-Beam Headlamp

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood on page 10-5*.
2. Reach in and access the bulb sockets from inside the engine compartment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

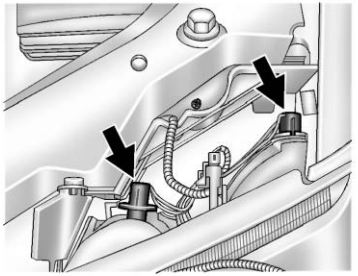


3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly and pull it straight out.
4. Unplug the electrical connector from the old bulb by releasing the clips on the bulb socket.
5. Pull the old bulb straight out.
6. Push the new bulb straight in until it clicks to secure it.
7. Plug in the electrical connector to the new bulb socket.
8. Push the bulb socket straight in and turn it clockwise to secure it in the headlamp assembly.

Front Turn Signal, Parking, and Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

To replace one of these bulbs:

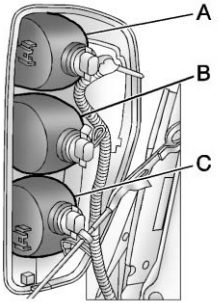
1. Open the hood. See *Hood on page 10-5*.



2. Reach in to access either one of the bulb sockets in the engine compartment.
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.
4. Holding the socket, pull the old bulb to release it from the bulb socket.
5. Push the new bulb into the socket until it clicks.
6. Push the bulb socket straight into the lamp assembly and turn it clockwise to secure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

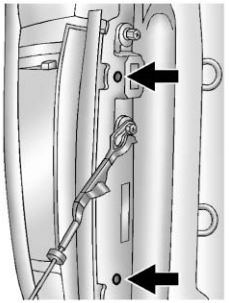
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps



A. Stoplamp/Taillamp
B. Turn Signal/Taillamp
C. Back-up Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the tailgate. See *Tailgate on page 2-7*.



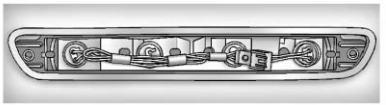
2. Remove the two rear lamp assembly screws near the tailgate latch.
3. Pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.
4. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the taillamp assembly.
5. Holding the socket, pull the old bulb straight out to release it from the socket.
6. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it clicks.
7. Insert the bulb socket into the taillamp assembly and turn it clockwise to secure.
8. Reinstall the taillamp assembly and tighten the screws.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)

To replace the CHMSL bulb:

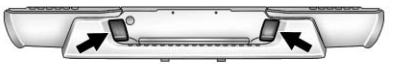
1. Remove the two screws and lift off the lamp assembly from the vehicle.



2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.
3. Holding the socket, pull the bulb to release it from the socket.
4. Push the new bulb into the socket until it clicks.
5. Insert the bulb socket into the lamp assembly and turn it clockwise to secure.
6. Reinstall the lamp assembly and tighten the screws.

License Plate Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs:



1. Reach under the rear bumper for the bulb socket.
2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull the bulb socket out of the connector.
3. Pull the old bulb straight out from the bulb socket.
4. Push the new bulb straight in until it clicks to secure it.
5. Reach under the rear bumper to reinstall the bulb socket into the connector.
6. Turn the bulb socket clockwise to secure it to the connector.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Cargo Lamp and Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)	912LL
License Plate Bulb	168LL
Headlamps	
High-beam	9005
Low-beam/ Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)	9006

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Parking/Front Turn Signal	3757KA
Parking Lamp (Inboard)	3157A
Stoplamp, Rear Turn Signal, Taillamp, and Back-up Lamp	3057

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect the following in the vehicle:

- Headlamp Wiring
- Windshield Wiper Motor
- Power Windows and Other Power Accessories

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

Windshield Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windshield wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windshield before using the windshield wipers.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

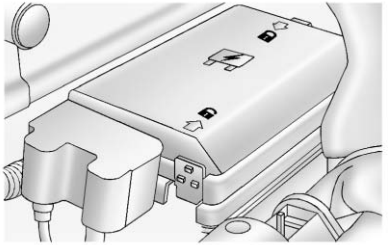
Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If you ever have a problem on the road and do not have a spare fuse, you can borrow one that has the same amperage. Just pick some feature of the vehicle that you can get along without — like the radio or cigarette lighter — and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block

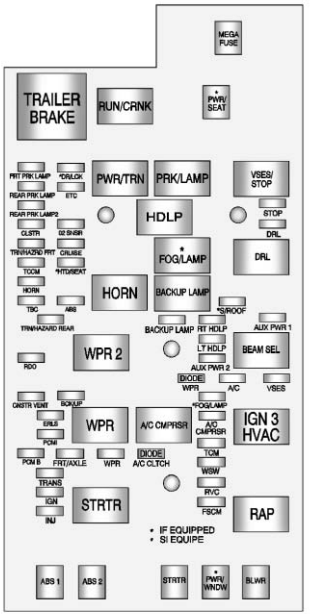


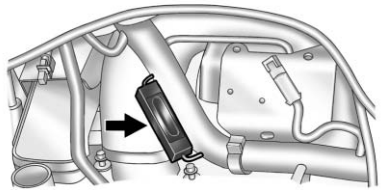
The engine compartment fuse block is located on the driver side of the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information on location.

To remove the cover, push in on the tab on the end of the cover and lift. To reinstall the cover, line up the tab and push down on the cover until the tab clicks into place.

Notice: **Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS





The trailer brake relay is located on the bottom side of the battery harness.

Fuses	Usage
O2 SNSR	Oxygen Sensors, Air Injection Reactor (AIR) Relay
A/C	Air Conditioning Control Head, Power Seats
A/C CMPRSR	Air Conditioning Compressor

Fuses	Usage
ABS	Antilock Brake System (ABS), ABS Module, Four-Wheel Drive, Gravity Sensor
ABS 1	ABS 1 (ABS Logic)
ABS 2	ABS 2 (ABS Pump)
AUX PWR 1	Accessory Power 1
AUX PWR 2	Accessory Power 2
BCK/UP	Back-up Lights
BLWR	Climate Control Fan
CLSTR	Cluster
CNSTR VENT	Fuel Canister Vent Solenoid
CRUISE	Cruise Control Switch, Inside Rearview Mirror, Transfer Case Control Module, Brake Switch, Clutch Disable

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuses	Usage
DR/LCK	Power Door Locks (If Equipped)
DRL	Daylight Running Lamps
ERLS	Mass Air Flow (MAF) Sensor, Can Purge Solenoid, Air Injector Reactor (AIR) Relay
ETC	Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)
FOG/LAMP	Fog Lamps (If Equipped)
FRT PRK LAMP	Front Park/Turn Lamps, Driver and Passenger Side Power Window Switches Lighting
FRT/AXLE	Front Axle Actuator
FSCM	Fuel System Control Module

Fuses	Usage
BACKUP LAMP	Backup Lamp
HORN	Horn
HTD/SEAT	Heated Seat (If Equipped)
IGN	Ignition, Clutch Starter Switch, Neutral Safety Back-Up Switch, Ignition Coils 1-5, Air Conditioning Relay
INJ	Injectors
LT HDLP	Driver Side Headlamp
PCM B	Power Control Module (PCM) B
PCMI	Power Control Module (PCM)
PWR/SEAT	Power Seat Circuit Breaker (If Equipped)

Fuses	Usage
PWR/WNDW	Power Windows (If Equipped)
RDO	Radio
REAR PRK LAMP	Rear Parking Lamp 1, Passenger Side Taillamp, License Plate Lamps
REAR PRK LAMP2	Driver Side Rear Taillamp, Passenger Side Airbag Indicator Lighting, Instrument Panel Dimming Power (2WD/4WD switch lighting)
RT HDLP	Passenger Side Headlamp
RVC	Regulated Voltage Control
S/ROOF	Not Used
STOP	Stop Lamps

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuses	Usage
STRTR	Starter Solenoid Relay
TBC	Truck Body Controller
TCM	Transmission Control Module
TCCM	Transfer Case Control Module
TRAILER BRAKE	Trailer Brake
TRANS	Transmission Solenoid
TRN/ HAZRD FRT	Turn/Hazard/ Courtesy/Cargo Lamps/Mirrors
TRN/ HAZRD REAR	Rear Turn/Hazard Lights
VSES/STOP	Vehicle Stability Enhancement System/Stop

Fuses	Usage
WPR	Wiper
WSW	Wiper/Washer Switch

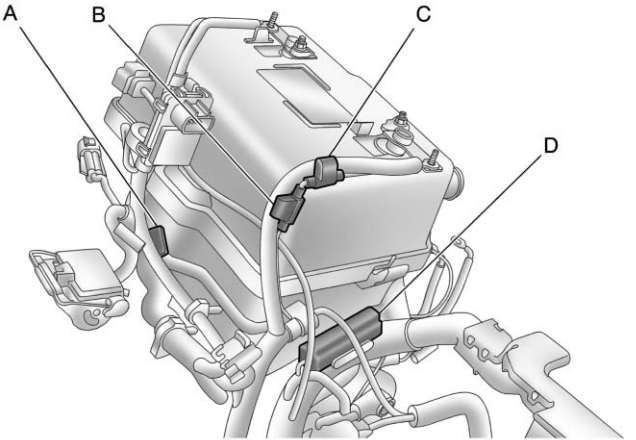
Relays	Usage
A/C CMPRSR	Air Conditioning Compressor
Backup Lamp	Backup Lamp
BEAM SEL	Beam Selection
DRL	Daylight Running Lamps
FOG/LAMP	Fog Lamps (If Equipped)
HDLP	Headlamps
HORN	Horn
IGN 3 HVAC	Ignition 3, Climate Control, Climate Control Head Fuse, Power Seat Fuse

Relays	Usage
PRK/LAMP	Front Parking Lamp Fuse, Rear Parking Lamps
PWR/TRN	Powertrain, Electronic Throttle Control Fuse, Oxygen Sensor Fuse
RAP	Retained Accessory Power (Power Window Fuse, Wiper/Washer Switch Fuse)
RUN/CRNK	Run/Crank, Airbag System Fuse, Cruise Control Fuse, Ignition Fuse, Back-Up Lamps, ABS Fuse, Front Axle, PCM-1, Injectors Fuse, Transmission Fuse, ERLS

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

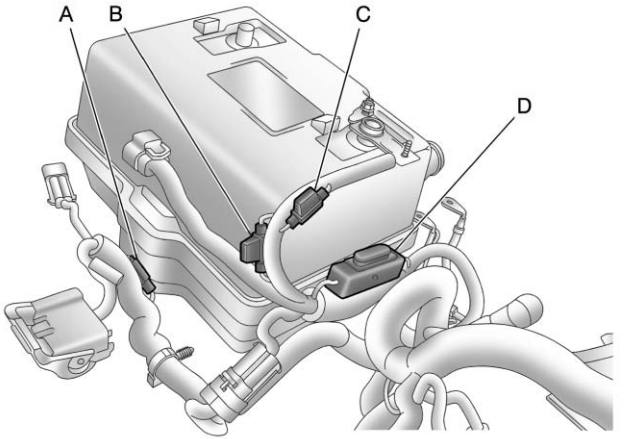
Relays	Usage
STRTR	Starter Relay (PCM Relay)
VSES	Vehicle Stability Enhancement System
WPR	Wipers (On/Off)
WPR 2	Wiper 2 (High/Low)

Miscellaneous	Usage
A/C CLTCH	Diode — Air Conditioning, Clutch
MEGA FUSE	Mega Fuse
WPR	Diode — Wiper



2.9L and 3.7L

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



5.3L

Fuses	Usage
A	Trailer Park Lamp
B	Communication Interface Module

Fuses	Usage
C	Supplemental Inflatable Restraint System, Sensing and Diagnostic Module
D	Trailer Auxiliary Maxi-Fuse

Information provided by DEALER E-PROCESS

Wheels and Tires

Tires

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. See the warranty manual for information regarding the tire warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.
- Overloading the tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout and a serious crash. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when the tires are cold.
- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn or old tires can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.
- Replace any tires that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.

(Continued)

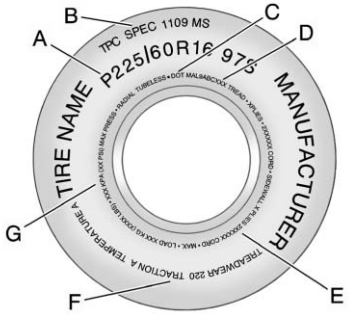
WARNING (Continued)

- Improperly repaired tires can cause a crash. Only the dealer or an authorized tire service center should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tires.
- Do not spin the tires in excess of 55 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tires to explode.

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples show a typical passenger vehicle tire and a compact spare tire sidewall.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire Example

(A) Tire Size: The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(C) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

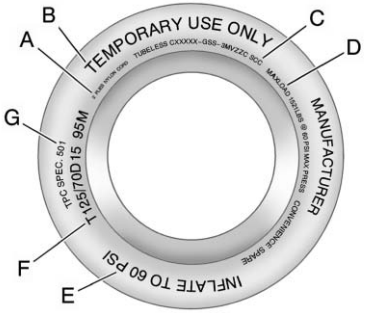
(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following the DOT (Department of Transportation) code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(E) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 10-63*.

(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Compact Spare Tire Example

(A) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(B) Temporary Use Only: The compact spare tire or temporary use tire has a tread life of approximately 5 000 km (3,000 mi) and should not be driven at speeds over 105 km/h (65 mph). The compact spare tire is for emergency use when a regular road tire has lost air and gone flat. If the vehicle has a compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 10-82* and *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-67*.

(C) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following the DOT (Department of Transportation) code is the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(D) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

(E) Tire Inflation: The temporary use tire or compact spare tire should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi). For more information on tire pressure and inflation see *Tire Pressure on page 10-52*.

(F) Tire Size: A combination of letters and numbers define a tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. The letter T as the first character in the tire size means the tire is for temporary use only.

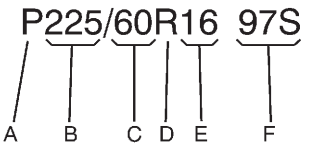
(G) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Designations

Tire Size

The following is an example of a typical passenger vehicle tire size.



(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 60, as shown in item C of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 60 percent as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Service Description: These characters represent the load index and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carrying capacity a tire is certified to carry. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch).

Accessory Weight: The combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-52*.

Curb Weight: The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs). See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-52* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 10-61*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards): A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 10-63*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 68 kg (150 lbs) plus the rated cargo load. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See “Tire and Loading Information Label” under *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Notice: **Neither tire underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tires, or tires that do not have enough air, can result in:**

- **Tire overloading and over-heating which could lead to a blowout.**
- **Premature or irregular wear.**
- **Poor handling.**
- **Reduced fuel economy.**

Overinflated tires, or tires that have too much air, can result in:

- **Unusual wear.**
- **Poor handling.**
- **Rough ride.**
- **Needless damage from road hazards.**

The Tire and Loading Information label on the vehicle indicates the original equipment tires and the correct cold tire inflation pressures. The recommended pressure is the minimum air pressure needed to support the vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

For additional information regarding how much weight the vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*. How the vehicle is loaded affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load the vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more. Do not forget the spare tire. If the vehicle has a compact spare tire, it should be at 60 psi (420 kPa). See *Compact Spare Tire on page 10-82* and *Full-Size Spare Tire on page 10-83* for additional information.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tire pressure. Proper tire inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tire. Check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold, meaning the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 1.6 km (1 mi).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary.

If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure is high, press on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve to release air

Re-check the tire pressure with the tire gauge.

Return the valve caps on the valve stems to prevent leaks and keep out dirt and moisture.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation

⚠ WARNING

Driving at high speeds, 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher, puts an additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat build up and can cause sudden tire failure. You could have a crash and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions are such that a vehicle can be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high speed operation, in excellent condition, and set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Vehicles with P235/50R18 size tires require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold inflation pressure to the maximum inflation pressure shown on the tire sidewall, or 241 kPa (35 psi), whichever is lower. See the example following. Return the tires to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure when high-speed driving has ended. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20* and *Tire Pressure on page 10-52*.

Example:

The maximum load and inflation pressure is molded on the tire sidewall, in small letters, near the rim flange. It will read something like this: Maximum load 690 kg (1521 lbs) 300 kPa (44 psi) Max. Press.

For this example, set the inflation pressure for high-speed driving at 241 kPa (35 psi).

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-55* for additional information.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Industry Canada

See *Radio Frequency Statement on page 13-17* for information regarding Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly on your vehicle, excluding the spare tire. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Powered by DEALER E-PROCESS

When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster.

If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the tire loading information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tire displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC). The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 5-19* and *Tire Messages on page 5-26*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label shows the size of the original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for the tires when they are cold. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle. Also see *Tire Pressure on page 10-52*.

Your vehicle's TPMS can warn you about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-59*, *Tire Rotation on page 10-59* and *Tires on page 10-46*.

Notice: **Tire sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM-approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire pressure warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after the road tire is replaced and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the vehicle's tires. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off once the TPMS sensor matching process is performed successfully. See “TPMS Sensor Matching Process” later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match the original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires on page 10-61*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly, it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tire/wheel position after rotating the vehicle’s tires or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. Also, the TPMS sensor matching process should be performed after replacing a spare tire with a road tire containing the TPMS sensor.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service or to purchase a relearn tool.

There is one minute to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The TPMS sensor matching procedure is:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
3. Turn the exterior lamp switch from AUTO to OFF four times within three seconds. A double horn chirp will sound and the TPMS low tire warning light starts flashing. The double horn chirp and flashing TPMS warning light indicates the TPMS matching process has started. The TPMS warning light should continue flashing throughout the matching procedure. The LOW TIRE message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC).
4. Start with the driver side front tire.
5. Place the relearn tool against the tire sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the TPMS sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position.
6. Proceed to the passenger side front tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
7. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
8. Proceed to the driver side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

9. After hearing the confirming horn chirp for the driver side rear tire, check to see if the TPMS low tire warning light and the DIC LOW TIRE messages have turned off. If yes, the TPMS sensors have been relearned. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.

   If the low tire warning light and the SERV TPM message on the DIC are on after completing Step 5 for the driver side rear tire, the sensor relearn process has not been successful. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF and repeat the matching process beginning with Step 2.

10. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.

Tire Inspection

We recommend that the tires, including the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tire if:

- The indicators at three or more places around the tire can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

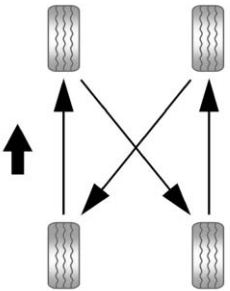
Tire Rotation

Tires should be rotated every 12 000 km (7,500 mi). See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-2*.

Tires are rotated to achieve a uniform wear for all tires. The first rotation is the most important.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Any time unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tires as soon as possible and check the wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 10-61* and *Wheel Replacement on page 10-65*.



Use this rotation pattern when rotating the tires.

If the vehicle has a compact spare tire, do not include it in the tire rotation.

Adjust the front and rear tires to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label after the tires have been rotated. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-52* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-55*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

⚠ WARNING

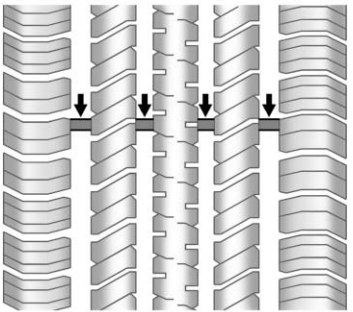
Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used, however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the center of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tire rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When It Is Time for New Tires

Factors, such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tires.



Treadwear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tires. Treadwear indicators appear when the tires have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. Some commercial truck tires may not have treadwear indicators. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-59* and *Tire Rotation on page 10-59* for additional information.

The rubber in tires ages over time. This also applies to the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple conditions including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast aging takes place. Tires will typically need to be replaced due to wear before they may need to be replaced due to age. Consult the tire manufacturer for more information on when tires should be replaced.

Vehicle Storage

Tires age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to slow aging. This area should be free of grease, gasoline or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tires that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a month, remove the tires or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tires.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for the vehicle. The original equipment tires installed were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. When replacement tires are needed, GM strongly recommends buying tires with the same TPC Spec rating.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of the vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 10-46* for additional information.

GM recommends replacing all the tires at the same time. Uniform tread depth on all tires will help to maintain the performance of the vehicle. Braking and handling performance may be adversely affected if all the tires are not replaced at the same time. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-59* and *Tire Rotation on page 10-59* for information on proper tire rotation.

⚠ WARNING

Tires could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tire could cause injury or death. Only your

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

dealer or authorized tire service center should mount or dismount the tires.

⚠ WARNING

Mixing tires of different sizes, brands, or types may cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels.

⚠ WARNING

Using bias-ply tires on the vehicle may cause the wheel rim flanges to develop cracks after many miles of driving.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly and cause a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

If the vehicle tires must be replaced with a tire that does not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction (radial) as the original tires.

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tires are installed. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 10-54*.

The Tire and Loading Information label indicates the original equipment tires on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*, for the label location and more information about the Tire and Loading Information label.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If wheels or tires are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tires, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, and electronic stability control, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

⚠ WARNING

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires on page 10-61* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-4* for additional information.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

All Passenger Car Tires Must Conform to Federal Safety Requirements In Addition To These Grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law. Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, check the alignment if there is unusual tire wear or if the vehicle is pulling to one side or the other. If the vehicle vibrates when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels might need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminum wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors with new GM original equipment parts.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Tires can lose air, and cause loss of control, causing a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-67* for more information.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ WARNING

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Tire Chains

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle has P215/70R16, P235/75R16, P265/70R17, P235/50R18, or P265/65R18 size tires, do not use tire chains. They can damage your vehicle because there is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on your vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, readjust, or remove the device if it is contacting your vehicle. Do not spin the vehicle's wheels.

If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the rear tires.

Notice: **If your vehicle has a tire size other than P215/70R16, P235/75R16, P265/70R17, P235/50R18, or P265/65R18 use tire chains only where legal and only when you must. Use chains that are the proper size for your tires. Install them on the tires of the rear axle.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not use chains on the tires of the front axle. Tighten them as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened. Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions. If you can hear the chains contacting your vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage your vehicle.

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while driving, especially if the tires are maintained properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there ever is a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

⚠ WARNING

Driving on a flat tire will cause permanent damage to the tire. Re-inflating a tire after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorized

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

tire service center repair or replace the flat tire as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road,

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

if possible. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-4*.

⚠ WARNING

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall causing injury or death. Find a level place to change the tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

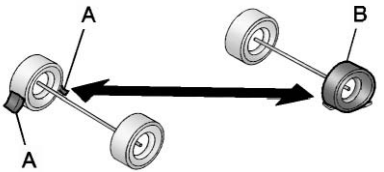
1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
3. For four-wheel-drive vehicles, be sure the transfer case is in a drive gear – not in N (Neutral).
4. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.

(Continued)

WARNING (Continued)

5. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.
6. Place wheel blocks on both sides of the tire at the opposite corner of the tire being changed.

When the vehicle has a flat tire (B), use the following example as a guide to assist in the placement of the wheel blocks (A).

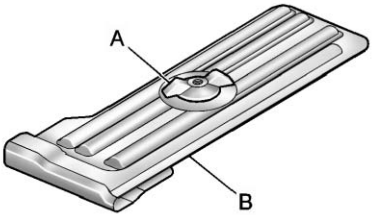


A. Wheel Block
B. Flat Tire

The following information explains how to use the jack and change a tire.

Tire Changing

Removing the Spare Tire and Tools



A. Wing Nut
B. Storage Bag and Tools

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

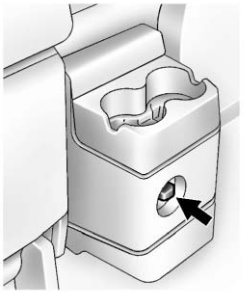
The tools you will need are located under the right front passenger seat.

1. Move the seat all the way forward to locate the tool bag.
2. Locate the wing nut (A) used to retain the storage bag and tools (B). Turn it counterclockwise to release the bag.

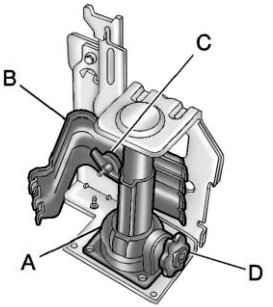
Put the tools to the side while you access the jack and wheel blocks.

Regular/Extended Cab

For regular and extended cab vehicles, the jack and wheel blocks are located under the cover at the center of the vehicle behind the front seats.



1. Turn the wing nut on the cover counterclockwise to remove it.



A. Jack
B. Wheel Blocks
C. Wing Nut
D. Jack Knob

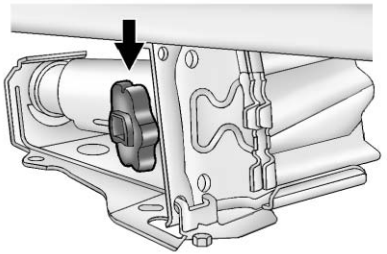
2. Lower the jack (A) by turning the jack knob (D) counterclockwise to release the jack from the bracket.
3. Turn the wing nut (C) holding the wheel blocks (B) to the back of the vehicle counterclockwise to release the wheel blocks.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Crew Cab

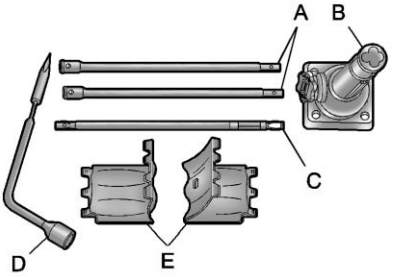
For crew cab models, the jack and wheel blocks are located under the driver side rear seat.

1. Reach under the rear seat to access the jack and wheel blocks.

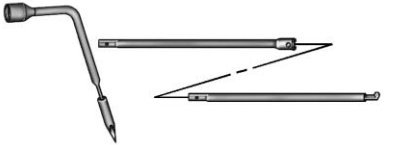


2. Turn the jack knob counterclockwise to lower the jack all the way and release it from the bracket.
3. Remove the wheel blocks and the wheel block retainer by turning the wing nut counterclockwise.

Use the jack handle extensions and the wheel wrench to remove the underbody-mounted spare tire.

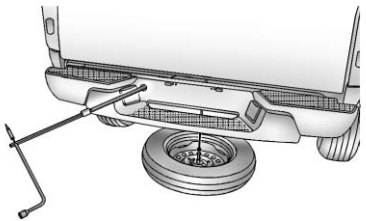


A. Jack Handle Extensions
B. Jack
C. Jack Handle
D. Wheel Wrench
E. Wheel Blocks



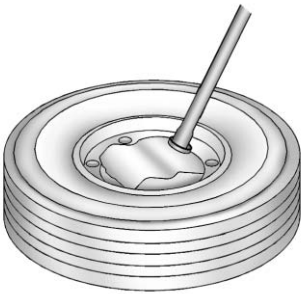
1. Assemble the wheel wrench (D), the jack handle extensions (A) and the jack handle (C) as shown.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Insert the chiseled end of the jack handle (C) at a slight angle through the hole in the rear bumper and into the funnel-shaped guide.
3. Turn the wheel wrench (D) counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.

If the spare tire does not lower to the ground, the secondary latch is engaged causing the tire not to lower. See *Secondary Latch System on page 10-79*.

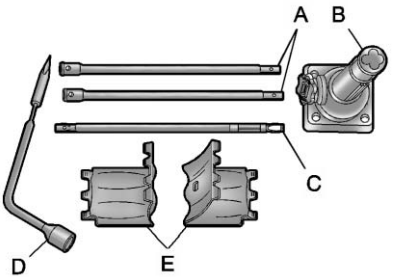


4. Tilt the retainer when the tire has been lowered, and slide it up the cable so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.
5. Put the spare tire near the flat tire.

Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

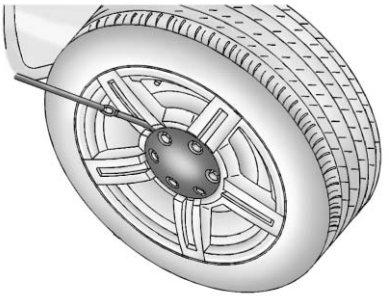
Use the following pictures and instructions to remove the flat tire and raise the vehicle.

The tools you will be using include the jack (A), the wheel blocks (B), the extension tool (C), the jack handle extensions (D), and the wheel wrench (E).

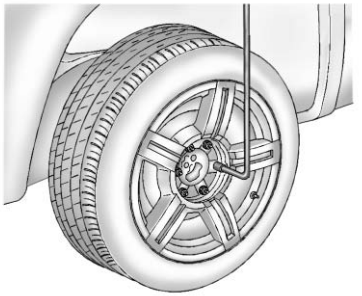


1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 10-67* for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Remove the center cap by placing the chisel end of the wheel wrench (E) into one of the slots on the wheel and gently prying the cap out.



3. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts by turning it counterclockwise. Do not remove the wheel nuts yet.

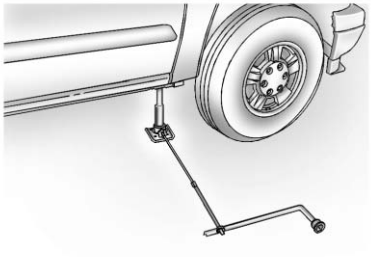
⚠ WARNING

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

⚠ WARNING

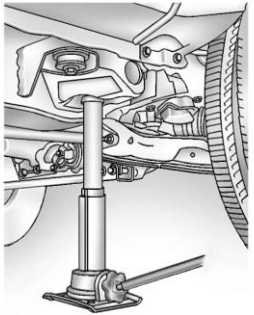
Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



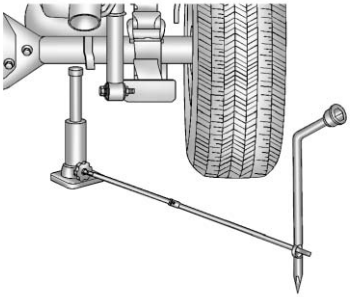
Front Position

4. Position the jack (A) under the vehicle as shown for the front or rear locations.



Front Position

If the flat tire is on the front of the vehicle, position the jack to the rear of the front tire in the pocket off of the frame.



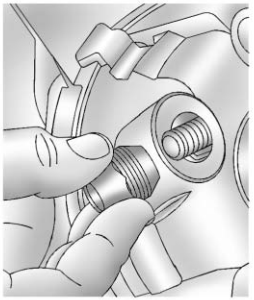
Rear Position

If the flat tire is on the rear, position the jack under the rear axle and get as close as possible to the shock absorber.

5. Make sure the jack head is positioned so that the rear axle is resting securely between the grooves that are on the jack head.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

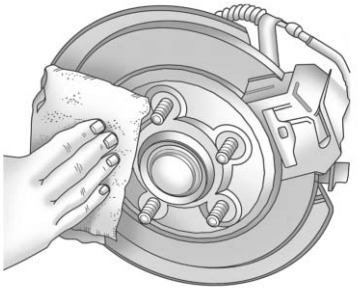
6. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to fit under the wheel well.



7. Remove all the wheel nuts and the flat tire.

⚠ WARNING

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used, however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

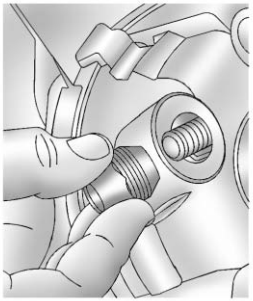


8. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.
9. Install the spare tire.

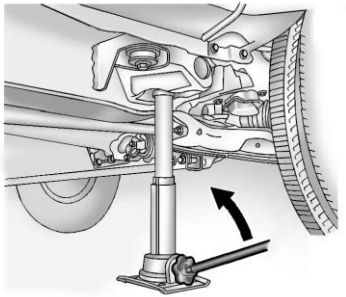
⚠ WARNING

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

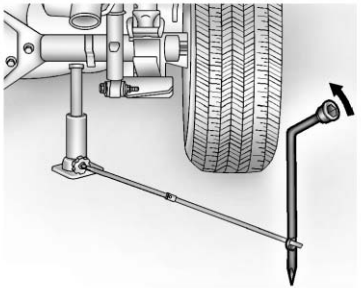
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



10. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel. Tighten each wheel nut by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.



Front Position



Rear Position

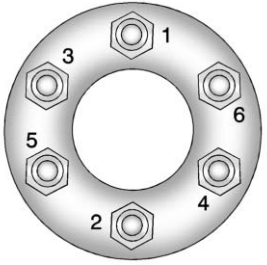
11. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle. Lower the jack completely.

⚠ WARNING

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification after replacing. Follow the torque specification supplied by the aftermarket manufacturer when using accessory locking wheel nuts. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for the wheel nut torque specification.**



12. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown by turning the wheel wrench clockwise.

When you reinstall the regular wheel and tire, you must also reinstall the center cap. Place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it seats flush with the wheel. The cap only goes on one way. Be sure to line up the tab on the center cap with the indentation on the wheel.

Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

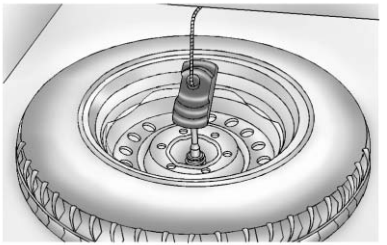
⚠ WARNING

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

Notice: **Storing an aluminum wheel with a flat tire under your vehicle for an extended period of time or with the valve stem pointing up can damage the wheel. Always stow the wheel with the valve stem pointing down and have the wheel/tire repaired as soon as possible.**

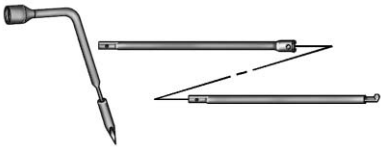
Store the tire under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tire carrier.

1. Put the tire on the ground at the rear of the vehicle with the valve stem pointed down.

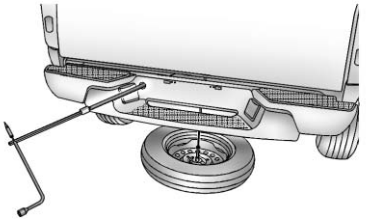


2. Tilt the retainer downward and through the center wheel opening. Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.

Information Provided By: DEALER E-PROCESS



3. Assemble the wheel wrench, the jack handle extensions, and the jack handle as shown.



4. Insert the chiseled end of the jack handle at a slight angle through the hole in the rear bumper and into the funnel-shaped guide.

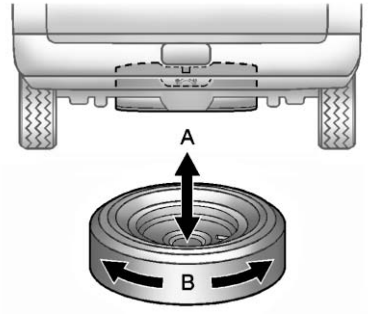
5. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the tire part way up. Make sure the retainer is seated in the wheel opening and the valve stem is pointed down.

   Continue raising the tire, watch to make sure it does not get caught on anything on the underbody. If the tire does get caught, loosen two or three turns and push and pull the tire and then retighten.

   Repeat this procedure as many times as needed to ensure proper stowage.

6. When the tire is properly seated to the underbody, continue turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



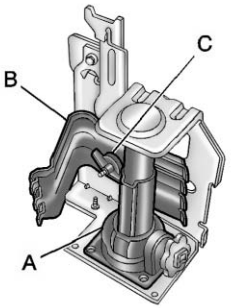
7. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull (A), and then try to turn (B) the tire. If the tire moves, check to make sure the tire valve stem is pointing down, then use the wheel wrench to loosen and then tighten the cable.

To store the tools:

1. Return the tools to the storage bag.
2. Attach the storage bag to the floor under the front passenger seat.
3. Reinstall the wing nut to secure the bag to the vehicle.

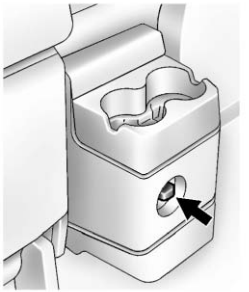
To store the jack and wheel blocks:

Regular/Extended Cab



A. Jack
B. Wheel Blocks
C. Wing Nut

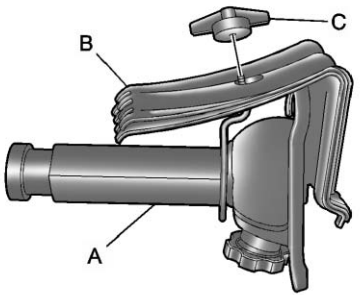
1. Install the wheel blocks (B) first.
2. Reinstall the wing nut (C) by turning it clockwise to secure the wheel blocks to the vehicle.
3. Lower the jack (A) all the way and insert the jack into the bracket.
4. Raise the jack by turning the handle clockwise to secure the jack within the bracket.



5. Put the cover in position and insert and tighten the wing nut to secure it.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Crew Cab



A. Jack

B. Wheel Blocks

C. Wing Nut

1. Attach the wheel blocks (B) to the jack (A) with the wheel block retainer and the wing nut (C).
2. Reinstall the jack and wheel block assembly in the mounting bracket. Be sure to position the holes in the base of the jack onto the pins in the mounting bracket.
3. Turn the handle to raise the jack until it is secure, but do not overtighten the jack in the bracket.

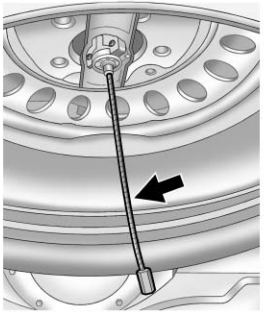
Secondary Latch System

Your vehicle has an underbody-mounted tire hoist assembly that has a secondary latch system. It is designed to stop the spare tire from suddenly falling off your vehicle. For the secondary latch to work, the spare must be installed with the valve stem pointing down. See “Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools” under *Tire Changing on page 10-68*.

⚠ WARNING

Before beginning this procedure read all the instructions. Failure to read and follow the instructions could damage the hoist assembly and you and others could get hurt. Read and follow the instructions listed next.

To release the spare tire from the secondary latch:

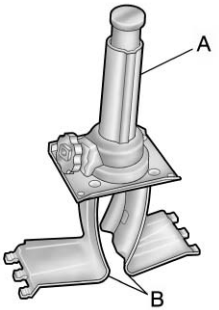


1. Check under the vehicle to see if the cable end fitting is visible.
2. If the cable end fitting is not visible, proceed to Step 6.

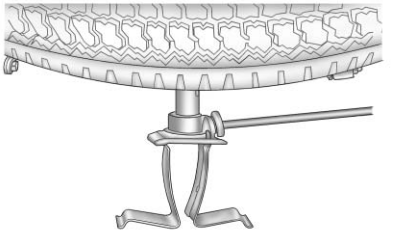
   If it is visible, first try to tighten the cable by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Loosen the cable by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise three or four turns.
4. Repeat this procedure at least two times. If the spare tire lowers to the ground, continue with Step 5 under “Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools” under *Tire Changing on page 10-68*.
5. Turn the wrench counterclockwise until approximately 6 inches (15 cm) of cable is exposed.
6. Stand the wheel blocks on their shortest ends, with the backs facing each other.



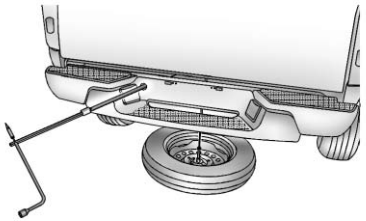
7. Place the bottom edge of the jack (A) on the wheel blocks (B), separating them so that the jack is balanced securely.



8. Attach the jack handle, extension, and wheel wrench to the jack and place it (with the wheel blocks) under the vehicle towards the front of the rear bumper. Position the center lift point of the jack under the wheel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

9. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the jack until it lifts the tire.
10. Continue raising the jack until the tire stops moving upward and is held firmly in place.



11. Remove the jack handle and insert the hoist end of the extension through the hole in the rear bumper.

    Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise one turn or until the wheel retainer assembly is disengaged.

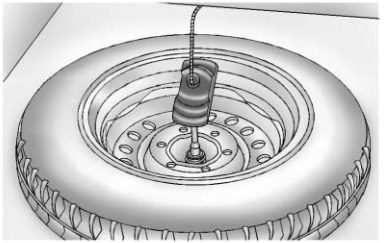
12. Reinsert the jack handle into the jack. Lower the jack by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise. Keep lowering the jack until the spare tire slides off the jack or is hanging by the cable.

⚠ WARNING

Someone standing too close during the procedure could be injured by the jack. If the spare tire does not slide off the jack completely, make sure no one is behind you or on either side of you as you pull the jack out from under the spare.

13. Disconnect the jack handle from the jack and carefully remove the jack. Use one hand to push against the spare while firmly pulling the jack out from under the spare tire with the other hand.

    If the spare tire is hanging from the cable, insert the hoist end of the extension into the hoist shaft hole in the bumper and turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare the rest of the way.



14. Tilt the tire retainer at the end of the cable and pull it through the wheel opening. Pull the tire out from under the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

15. If the cable is hanging under the vehicle, turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the cable.

    Have the hoist assembly inspected as soon as you can. You will not be able to store a spare or flat tire using the hoist assembly until it has been replaced.

To continue changing the flat tire, see “Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire” under *Tire Changing on page 10-68*.

Compact Spare Tire

Your vehicle may have a compact spare tire. Although the compact spare tire was fully inflated when your vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 60 psi (420 kPa).

Notice: **If the vehicle has four-wheel drive and the compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle, do not drive in four-wheel drive until you can have the flat tire repaired and/or replaced. You could damage the vehicle, and the repair costs would not be covered by your warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when the compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.**

After installing the compact spare on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure your vehicle's spare tire is correctly inflated. The compact spare is made to perform well at speeds up to 62 mph (100 km/h) for distances up to 500 miles (804 km). For heavy payloads or towing, and for low traction or four-wheel-drive conditions, repair or replace the full-size tire. Of course, it is best to replace your vehicle's spare with a full-size tire as soon as you can. The spare tire will last longer and be in good shape in case you need it again.

Notice: **When the compact spare is installed, do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails which can damage the tire, wheel and other parts of the vehicle.**

Do not use your compact spare on other vehicles.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

And do not mix your compact spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They will not fit. Keep your spare tire and its wheel together.

Notice: **Tire chains will not fit the compact spare. Using them can damage the vehicle and can damage the chains too. Do not use tire chains on the compact spare.**

Full-Size Spare Tire

Your vehicle may have a full-size spare tire, which, when new, was fully inflated. A spare tire may lose air over time, so check its inflation pressure regularly. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-52* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20* for information regarding proper tire inflation and loading your vehicle. For instruction on how to remove, install, or store a spare tire, see "Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire" and "Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools" under *Tire Changing on page 10-68*.

Your vehicle may have a different size spare tire than the road tires originally installed on your vehicle. This spare was developed for use on your vehicle, so it is alright to drive on it. If your vehicle has four-wheel drive and the different size spare tire is installed, keep the vehicle in two-wheel drive.

Notice: **If the vehicle has four-wheel drive and the different size spare tire is installed on the vehicle, do not drive in four-wheel drive until you can have your flat tire repaired and/or replaced. You could damage the vehicle, and the repair costs would not be covered by your warranty. Never use four-wheel drive when the different size spare tire is installed on the vehicle.**

After installing the spare tire on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare is correctly inflated. The spare tire is made to perform well at speeds up to 62 mph (100 km/h) for distances up to 500 miles (804 km). For heavy payloads or towing, and for low traction or four-wheel-drive conditions, repair or replace the full-size tire. Have the damaged or flat road tire repaired or replaced as soon as you can and installed back onto your vehicle. This way, the spare tire will be available in case you need it again.

Do not mix tires and wheels of different sizes, because they will not fit. Keep your spare tire and its wheel together.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Jump Starting

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery on page 10-29*.

If the vehicle battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ WARNING

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Notice: **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the warranty.**

Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Notice: **Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting. If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged.**

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in Neutral before setting the parking brake. If you have a four-wheel-drive vehicle, be sure the transfer case is not in Neutral.

Notice: **If the radio or other accessories are left on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Always turn off the radio and other accessories when jump starting the vehicle.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save the radio!
4. Open the hoods and locate the positive (+) and negative (−) terminal locations on the other vehicle. Your vehicle has a remote positive (+) and a remote negative (−) jump starting terminal. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-6* for more information on the terminal locations.

⚠ WARNING

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the batteries have enough water. You do not need to add water to the ACDelco® battery (or batteries) installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ WARNING

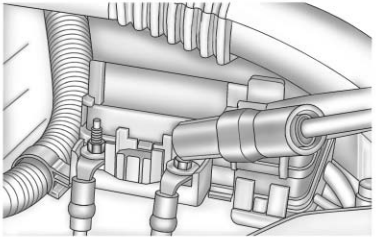
Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (−) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (−) terminal if the vehicle has one.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not connect positive (+) to negative (−) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (−) cable to the negative (−) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.



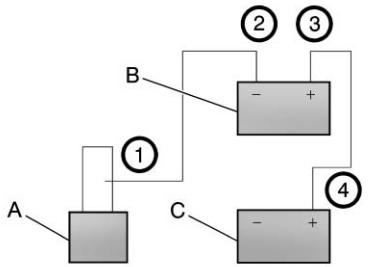
6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
8. Now connect the black negative (−) cable to the negative (−) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (−) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (−) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part, or to a remote negative (−) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.
9. Connect the other end of the negative (−) cable at least 45 cm (18 inches) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.

   Your vehicle has a remote negative (−) terminal for this purpose.
10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Notice: **If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS



Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (−) Terminal

B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Remote Negative (−) Terminals

C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles, do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (−) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (−) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.

Towing

Towing the Vehicle

Notice: **To avoid damage, the disabled vehicle should be towed with all four wheels off the ground. Care must be taken with vehicles that have low ground clearance and/or special equipment. Always flatbed on a car carrier.**

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed. See *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-9*.

To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes, such as behind a motor home, see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” in this section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Recreational Vehicle Towing

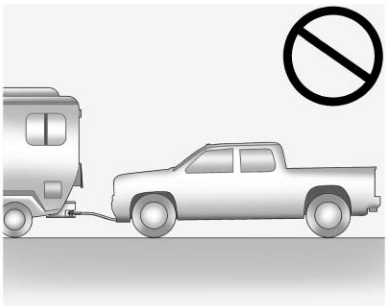
Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle – such as behind a motor home. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be travelled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

Dinghy Towing

Two-Wheel Drive Vehicles

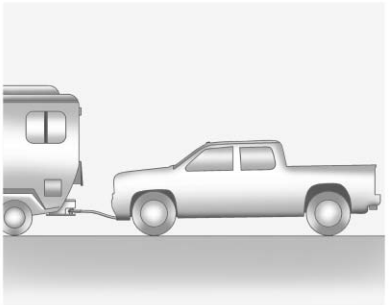


Notice: **If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not tow the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.**

Two-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with all four wheels on the ground. Two-wheel-drive transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Four-Wheel Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to dinghy tow a four-wheel-drive vehicle:

1. Position the vehicle being towed behind the tow vehicle.
2. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First).
3. Turn the engine off and firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.
4. Securely attach the vehicle being towed to the tow vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting a full-time four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the automatic transmission is in P (Park) or the manual transmission is in any gear. You or others could be injured. Make sure the parking brake is firmly set before the transfer case is shifted to N (Neutral).

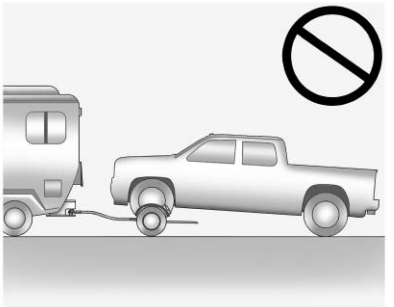
5. Shift the transfer case to N (Neutral). See “Shifting into N (Neutral)” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-30*.
6. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF and remove the key — the front wheels will still turn.
7. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the towing vehicle.

After towing see “Shifting Out of N (Neutral)” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-30*.

If the vehicle being towed will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove the battery cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent the battery from draining.

Dolly Towing

Front Towing (Front Wheels Off the Ground) – Two-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



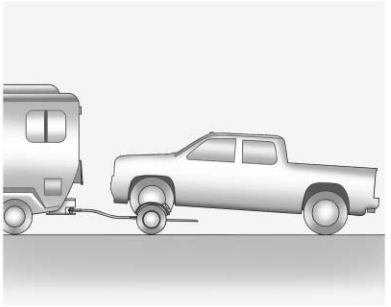
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Notice: **If a two-wheel-drive vehicle is towed with the rear wheels on the ground, the transmission could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground.**

Two-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with the rear wheels on the ground. Two-wheel-drive transmissions have no provisions for internal lubrication while being towed.

To dolly tow a two-wheel-drive vehicle, the vehicle must be towed with the rear wheels on the dolly. See “Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground)” later in this section for more information.

Front Towing (Front Wheels Off the Ground) – Four-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to dolly tow a four-wheel-drive vehicle from the front:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the front wheels onto the dolly.
3. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First).
4. Turn the engine off and firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting a full-time four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the automatic transmission is in P (Park) or the manual transmission is in any gear. You or others could be injured. Make sure the parking brake is firmly set before the transfer case is shifted to N (Neutral).

5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.

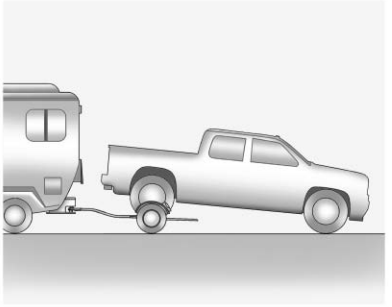
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

6. Shift the transfer case to N (Neutral). See “Shifting into N (Neutral)” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-30*.
7. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the towing vehicle.
8. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

After towing, see “Shifting Out of N (Neutral)” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-30*.

If the vehicle being towed will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove the battery cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent the battery from draining.

Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground) – Two-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



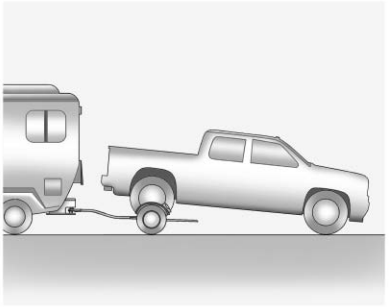
Use the following procedure to dolly tow a two-wheel-drive vehicle from the rear:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the dolly.
3. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.
4. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First).
5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
6. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.
7. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

   If the vehicle being towed will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove the battery cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent the battery from draining.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Towing (Rear Wheels Off the Ground) – Four-Wheel-Drive Vehicles



Use the following procedure to dolly tow a four-wheel-drive vehicle from the rear:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the dolly.
3. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-44*.
4. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First).
5. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
6. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting a full-time four-wheel-drive vehicle's transfer case into N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the automatic transmission is in P (Park) or the manual transmission is in any gear. You or others could be injured. Make sure the parking brake is firmly set before the transfer case is shifted to N (Neutral).

7. Shift the transfer case to N (Neutral). See “Shifting into N (Neutral)” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-30*.
8. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

   If the vehicle being towed will not be started or driven for six weeks or more, remove the battery cable from the negative terminal (post) of the battery to prevent the battery from draining.

After towing, see “Shifting Out of N (Neutral)” under *Four-Wheel Drive on page 10-30*.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*.

Washing the Vehicle

The best way to preserve the vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often.

Notice: **Certain cleaners contain chemicals that can damage the emblems or nameplates on the vehicle. Check the cleaning product label. If it states that it should not be used on plastic parts, do not use it on the vehicle or damage may occur and it would not be covered by the warranty.**

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Use a car washing soap. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based or that contain acid or abrasives, as they can damage the paint, metal or plastic on the vehicle. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturers' directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8 274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under “Washing the Vehicle”.

Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of the vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the vehicle has a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish, the clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

Notice: **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. To help keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, chrome polish may be used on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean the rubber blades using a lint free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking. Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged.

Wipers can be damaged by:

- Extreme dusty conditions
- Sand and salt
- Heat and sun
- Snow and ice, without proper removal

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels and Trim

The vehicle may have either aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Notice: **Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the vehicle's chrome with soap and water after exposure.**

Notice: **Using strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use only approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.**

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of the vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because they could damage the surface. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Notice: **Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.**

Use chrome polish only on chrome-plated wheels, but avoid any painted surface of the wheel, and buff off immediately after application.

Notice: **Driving the vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never drive a vehicle that has aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.**

Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

Notice: **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your dealer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this.

Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, we will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 20 000 km (12,000 mi) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior Care

The interior will continue to look its best if it is cleaned often. Dust and dirt can accumulate on the upholstery and cause damage to the carpet, fabric, leather, and plastic surfaces. Stains should be removed quickly as extreme heat could cause them to set rapidly.

Lighter colored interiors may require more frequent cleaning. Newspapers and garments that can transfer color to home furnishings can also transfer color to the interior.

Remove dust from small buttons and knobs with a small brush with soft bristles.

Your dealer has products for cleaning the interior. When cleaning the interior, only use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces that are being cleaned.

Permanent damage can result from using cleaners on surfaces for which they were not intended. Apply the cleaner directly to the cleaning cloth to prevent over-spray. Remove any accidental over-spray from other surfaces immediately.

Notice: **Using abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on the vehicle, could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger. When cleaning the glass on the vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.**

Cleaners can contain solvents that can become concentrated in the interior. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the doors and windows.

Do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a knife or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a stiff brush. It can cause damage to the interior surfaces.
- Never apply heavy pressure or rub aggressively with a cleaning cloth. Use of heavy pressure can damage the interior and does not improve the effectiveness of soil removal.
- Use only mild, neutral-pH soaps. Avoid laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. Using too much soap will leave a residue that leaves streaks and attracts dirt. For liquid cleaners, about 20 drops per 3.78 L (1 gal) of water is a good guide.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery while cleaning.
- Cleaners that contain solvents can damage the interior.

Fabric/Carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment to remove dust and loose dirt. A canister vacuum with a beater bar in the nozzle may only be used on floor carpet and carpeted floor mats. For soils, always try to remove them first with plain water or club soda. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- For liquids: gently blot the remaining soil with a paper towel. Allow the soil to absorb into the paper towel until no more can be removed.
- For solid dry soils: remove as much as possible and then vacuum.

To clean:

1. Saturate a lint-free, clean white cloth with water or club soda.
2. Remove excess moisture.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
4. Continue to gently rub the soiled area.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution and repeat the cleaning process that was used with plain water.

If any of the soil remains, a commercial fabric cleaner or spot lifter may be necessary. Test a small hidden area for colorfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If the locally cleaned area gives any impression that a ring formation may result, clean the entire surface.

A paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture from the fabric or carpet after the cleaning process.

Leather/Leatherette

Leather, and lighter colored leather in particular, will need more frequent cleaning to prevent the buildup of dust, dirt, and colors transferred from other items so that these do not become permanent stains.

To remove dust, a soft cloth dampened with water can be used. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used. Your dealer has a GM approved leather cleaner available that provides superior cleaning performance when used regularly on finished automotive leathers. Allow the leather to dry naturally.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not use heat, steam, spot lifters or spot removers, or shoe polish on leather. Many commercial leather cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect leather may permanently change the appearance and feel of the leather and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Instrument Panel, Vinyl and other Plastic Surfaces

To remove dust, a soft cloth dampened with water can be used. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a clean soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used to gently remove dust and dirt. Never use spot lifters or removers on plastic surfaces. Many commercial cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect soft plastic surfaces may permanently change the appearance and feel of the interior and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Some commercial products may increase gloss on the instrument panel. The increase in gloss may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

Notice: **Air fresheners contain solvents that may cause damage to plastics and painted surfaces. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using air fresheners in the vehicle. If air freshener comes in contact with paint or a plastic surface, blot immediately with a soft cloth. Damage caused by using air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ WARNING

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Floor Mats

⚠ WARNING

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for the vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that GM certified floor mats be purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Service and Maintenance

General Information
General Information 11-1

Scheduled Maintenance
Scheduled Maintenance 11-2

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-6
Maintenance Replacement Parts 11-9

Maintenance Records
Maintenance Records 11-10

General Information

Notice: **Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, recommended fluids, and lubricants are necessary to keep this vehicle in good working condition. Damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the scheduled maintenance in this section. We recommend having your dealer perform these services. Proper vehicle maintenance helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, improves fuel economy, and reduces vehicle emissions for better air quality.

Because of all the different ways people use vehicles, maintenance needs vary. The vehicle might need more frequent checks and services. Please read the information under Scheduled Maintenance. To keep the vehicle in good condition, see your dealer.

The maintenance schedule is for vehicles that:

- Carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-20*.
- Are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Are driven off-road in the recommended manner. See *Off-Road Driving on page 9-6*.
- Use the recommended fuel. See *Recommended Fuel on page 9-51*.

⚠ WARNING

Performing maintenance work can be dangerous. Some jobs can cause serious injury. Perform maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment. If in doubt, see your dealer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 10-4*.

At your dealer, you can be certain that you will receive the highest level of service available. Your dealer has specially trained service technicians, uses genuine replacement parts, as well as, up-to-date tools and equipment to ensure fast and accurate diagnostics.

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6* and *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 11-9*. We recommend the use of genuine parts from your dealer.

Rotation of New Tires

To maintain ride, handling, and performance of the vehicle, it is important that the first rotation service for new tires be performed. Tires should be rotated every 12 000 km/7,500 miles. See *Tire Rotation on page 10-59*.

Scheduled Maintenance

When the Change Oil Message Displays

Change engine oil and filter. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*. *An Emission Control Service.*

When the CHANGE OIL message displays, service is required for the vehicle as soon as possible, within the next 1 000 km/600 miles.
If driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system might not indicate the need for vehicle service for more than a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and the oil life system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service technicians who will perform this work and reset the system. If the engine oil life system is reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 5 000 km/3,000 miles since the last service. Reset the oil

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*.

Every Engine Oil Change

- Change engine oil and filter. Reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9* and *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-12*. *An Emission Control Service.*
- Engine coolant level check. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-19*.
- Engine cooling system inspection. Visual inspection of hoses, pipes, fittings, and clamps and replacement, if needed.
- Windshield washer fluid level check. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-26*.
- Windshield wiper blade inspection for wear, cracking, or contamination and windshield and wiper blade cleaning, if contaminated. See *Exterior Care on page 10-93*. Worn or damaged wiper blade replacement. See *Wiper Blade Replacement on page 10-33*.
- Tire inflation pressures check. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-52*.
- Tire wear inspection. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-59*.
- Rotate tires if necessary. See *Tire Rotation on page 10-59*.
- Fluids visual leak check (or every 12 months, whichever occurs first). A leak in any system must be repaired and the fluid level checked.
- Engine air cleaner filter inspection. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-17*.
- Brake system inspection (or every 12 months, whichever occurs first).
- Steering and suspension inspection. Visual inspection for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear.
- Body hinges and latches, key lock cylinders, and folding seat hardware lubrication. Lubricate hood safety lever pivot and prop rod pivot and tailgate latch bolt, handle assembly pivot points, and hinges. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6*. More frequent lubrication may be required when the vehicle is exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth makes them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.
- Restraint system component check. See *Safety System Check on page 3-26*.
- Fuel system inspection for damage or leaks.
- Exhaust system and nearby heat shields inspection for loose or damaged components.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Additional Required Services

Every 12 000 km/7,500 Miles

- Rotate tires. Tires should be rotated every 12 000 km/ 7,500 miles. See *Tire Rotation on page 10-59*.

At Each Fuel Stop

- Engine oil level check. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.
- Engine coolant level check. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-19*.
- Windshield washer fluid level check. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-26*.

Once a Month

- Tire inflation check. See *Tire Pressure on page 10-52*.
- Tire wear inspection. See *Tire Inspection on page 10-59* and *Tire Rotation on page 10-59*.

Once a Year

- See *Starter Switch Check on page 10-31*.
- See *Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check on page 10-32*.
- See *Ignition Transmission Lock Check on page 10-32*.
- See *Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check on page 10-33*.
- Accelerator pedal check for damage, high effort, or binding. Replace if needed.
- Underbody flushing service.
- Hood/Decklid/Liftgate/Liftglass Support Gas Strut Service: Visually inspect gas strut, if equipped, for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage. Check the hold open ability of the gas strut. Contact your dealer if service is required.

First Engine Oil Change After Every 80 000 km/50,000 Miles

- Engine air cleaner filter replacement. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-17*.
- Automatic transmission fluid change (severe service) for vehicles mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather, in hilly or mountainous terrain, when frequently towing a trailer, or used for taxi, police, or delivery service. See *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 10-13*.
- Four-wheel drive only: Transfer case fluid change (severe service) for vehicles mainly driven when frequently towing a trailer, or used for taxi, police, or delivery service. Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation. Check to be sure vent hose is unobstructed, clear, and free of debris. During any maintenance,

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.

- Evaporative control system inspection. Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing, and condition. Check that the purge valve, if the vehicle has one, works properly. Replace as needed. *An Emission Control Service. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency or the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. We, however, urge that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals and the maintenance be recorded.*

First Engine Oil Change After Every 160 000 km/100,000 Miles

- Automatic transmission fluid change (normal service). See *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 10-13*.
- Four-wheel drive only: Transfer case fluid change (normal service). Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation. Check to be sure vent hose is unobstructed, clear, and free of debris. During any maintenance, if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.
- Spark plug replacement and spark plug wires inspection. *An Emission Control Service.*

First Engine Oil Change After Every 240 000 km/150,000 Miles

- Engine cooling system drain, flush, and refill (or every five years, whichever occurs first). See *Engine Coolant on page 10-19*. *An Emission Control Service.*
- Engine drive belts inspection for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage (or every 10 years, whichever occurs first). Replace, if needed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	The engine requires engine oil approved to the dexos specification. Oils meeting this specification can be identified with the dexos certification mark. Look for and use only an engine oil that displays the dexos certification mark of the proper viscosity grade. See *Engine Oil on page 10-9*.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-19*.
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. 12377967, in Canada 89021320).
Windshield Washer	Optikleen® Washer Solvent.
Parking Brake Cable Guides	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Power Steering System	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Manual Transmission	Manual Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. 89021806, in Canada 89021807).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Hydraulic Clutch System	Hydraulic Clutch Fluid (GM Part No. 12345347, in Canada 10953517) or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid.
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Chassis Lubrication	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Front and Rear Axle	SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. 89021677, in Canada 89021678).
Transfer Case	Synchromesh Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. 12345349, in Canada 10953465).
Rear Driveline Center Spline and Universal Joints	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Constant Velocity Universal Joint	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor, and Release Pawl	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hood and Door Hinges, Body Door Hinge Pins, Liftgate Hinge and Linkage, Folding Seats, and Fuel Door Hinge	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Outer Tailgate Handle Pivot Points and Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. 12345579, in Canada 992887).
Weatherstrip Squeaks	Synthetic Grease with Teflon, Superlube (GM Part No. 12371287, in Canada 10953437).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	15942429	—
Engine Oil Filter		
2.9L L4 Engine	19210283	PF46
3.7L L5 Engine	19210285	PF61
5.3L V8 Engine	89017524	PF48
Spark Plugs		
2.9L L4 and 3.7L L5 Engines	12625058	41-103
5.3L V8 Engine	12609877	41-985
Wiper Blades		
Driver Side — 55 cm (22 in)	10389562	—
Passenger Side — 48 cm (19 in)	10389563	—

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Records

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. Retain all maintenance receipts.

Maintenance Record

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record (cont.)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record (cont.)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record (cont.)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Record (cont.)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Services Performed

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Service Parts Identification Label 12-1

Vehicle Data
Capacities and Specifications 12-2
Engine Drive Belt Routing . . . 12-4

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This legal identifier is in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the left side of the vehicle. It can be seen through the windshield from outside. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See “Engine Specifications” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for the vehicle's engine code.

Service Parts Identification Label

This label, on the inside of the glove box, has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Model designation.
- Paint information.
- Production options and special equipment.

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate conversion capacities are given in metric and English conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-6* for more information.

Capacities and Specifications

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Air Conditioning Refrigerant R134a	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant label located under the hood. See your dealer for more information.	
Cooling System		
2.9L L4 Engine	9.8 L	10.4 qt
3.7L L5 Engine	10.0 L	10.6 qt
5.3L V8 Engine	13.0 L	13.7 qt
Engine Oil with Filter		
2.9L L4 Engine	4.7 L	5.0 qt
3.7L L5 Engine	5.7 L	6.0 qt
5.3L V8 Engine	5.7 L	6.0 qt
Fuel Tank	74 L	19.5 gal

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Capacities and Specifications (cont.)

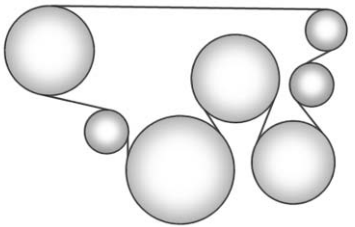
Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Transmission		
Automatic (Pan Removal and Filter Replacement)	4.7 L	5.0 qt
Manual – Rear-Wheel Drive (Drain and Refill)	2.2 L	2.3 qt
Manual – Four-Wheel Drive (Drain and Refill)	2.3 L	2.4 qt
Wheel Nut Torque	140 N•m	100 lb ft
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

Engine Specifications

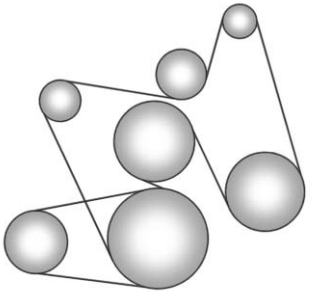
Type	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
2.9L L4	9	Automatic Manual	1.01 mm (0.040 in)
3.7L L5	E	Automatic	1.01 mm (0.040 in)
5.3L V8	P	Automatic	1.01 mm (0.040 in)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Drive Belt Routing



2.9L and 3.7L Engines



5.3L Engine

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Information

Customer Information
Customer Satisfaction Procedure (U.S. and Canada) 13-1
Customer Satisfaction Procedure (Mexico) 13-3
Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada) 13-4
Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) 13-5
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users (U.S. and Canada) 13-6
Online Owner Center 13-6
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program (U.S. and Canada) 13-7
Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) 13-7
Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) 13-9
Scheduling Service Appointments (U.S. and Canada) 13-9
Courtesy Transportation Program (U.S. and Canada) 13-10
Collision Damage Repair (U.S. and Canada) 13-11
Service Publications Ordering Information 13-13

Reporting Safety Defects
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 13-14
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 13-15
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 13-15

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 13-16
Event Data Recorders 13-16
OnStar® 13-17
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-17
Radio Frequency Statement 13-17

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure (U.S. and Canada)

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Chevrolet. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle will be resolved by the dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE: Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service, or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO: If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, in the U.S., call the Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-222-1020. In Canada, call General Motors of Canada Customer Communication Centre at 1-800-263-3777 (English), or 1-800-263-7854 (French).

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Chevrolet, remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest following Step One first.

STEP THREE — U.S. Owners: Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you can file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line® Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out-of-court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
www.dr.bbb.org/goauto

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEP THREE — Canadian Owners: In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, General Motors of Canada Limited wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge Mediation/Arbitration Program. General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in about 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685, or call the General Motors Customer Communication Centre, 1-800-263-3777 (English), 1-800-263-7854 (French), or write to:

The Mediation/Arbitration Program
c/o Customer Communication Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Your inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Customer Satisfaction Procedure (Mexico)

GM Garantía PLUS

Did you get the Warranty Extension Plan? This plan is recommended by General Motors to supplement the warranty included with the new vehicle purchase.

See your dealer for details.

Customer Assistance Procedure

Owner satisfaction and goodwill are very important to your dealer and General Motors.

Normally, any problem with the transaction, sale, or usage of the vehicle must be handled by your dealer sales or service departments.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

However, we recognize that despite the good intentions of all parties involved, sometimes a misunderstanding may occur.

If you have a problem that has not been satisfactorily handled through the normal means, we suggest the following steps:

STEP ONE

Explain your case to the dealer service agent, service manager, dealer sales agent, or sales manager, depending on your case.

Make sure that they have all necessary information. They are interested in your continual satisfaction.

STEP TWO

If you are not satisfied, please contact the general manager or the dealership owner to ask for their help. If they are not able to resolve your case, ask them to contact the right people at General Motors for support, if needed.

STEP THREE

If your case is not resolved in a reasonable amount of time by your dealer, please call the General Motors Customer Assistance Center (CAC) and provide the following information:

- Name
- Address
- Phone number
- Model year
- Brand
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Mileage
- Delivery date
- Description of the problem
- Dealership name
- Dealership address

See *Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-4* or *Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico) on page 13-5* for more information.

Customer Assistance Offices (U.S. and Canada)

Chevrolet encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Chevrolet, the letter should be addressed to:

United States

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170
www.Chevrolet.com

1-800-222-1020
1-800-833-2438 (For Text Telephone Devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance:
1-800-243-8872

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

From Puerto Rico:

1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)

From U.S. Virgin Islands:

1-800-496-9994

Canada

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre,
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7
www.gm.ca

1-800-263-3777 (English)
1-800-263-7854 (French)
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance:
1-800-268-6800

Overseas

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Mexico, Central America, and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands)

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Av. Ejercito Nacional #843
Col. Granada
C.P. 11520, Mexico, D.F.

01-800-466-0800
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0800

Customer Assistance Offices (Mexico)

To contact the Customer Assistance Center (CAC), use the phone numbers listed in this section. Customer assistance is available Monday through Friday, 08:00 to 20:00 hours, and Saturdays from 08:00 to 15:00 hours.

All e-mail inquiries to the Customer Assistance Center (CAC) should be sent to: cac.chevrolet@gm.com.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Mexico

From Mexico City

5329-0811

From Other Mexico Locations

01-800-466-0811

United States and Canada

1-866-466-8190

Costa Rica

00-800-052-1005

Guatemala

1-800-999-5252

Panama

00-800-052-0001

Dominican Republic

1-888-751-5301

El Salvador

800-6273

Honduras

800-0122-6101

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users (U.S. and Canada)

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Chevrolet has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user in the U.S. can communicate with Chevrolet by dialing: 1-800-833-2438. TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.

Online Owner Center

Chevrolet Owner Center (U.S.) www.chevyownercenter.com

Information and services customized for your specific vehicle — all in one convenient place.

- Digital owner manual, warranty information, and more.
- Storage for online service and maintenance records.
- Chevrolet dealer locator for service nationwide.
- Exclusive privileges and offers.
- Recall notices for your specific vehicle.
- OnStar and GM Cardmember Services Earnings summaries.

Other Helpful Links

Chevrolet — www.chevrolet.com

Chevrolet Merchandise — www.chevymall.com

Help Center — www.chevrolet.com/pages/mds/helpcenter/faq.do

- FAQ
- Contact Us

My GM Canada www.gm.ca

My GM Canada is a password-protected section of www.gm.ca where you can save information on GM vehicles, get personalized offers, and use handy tools and forms with greater ease.

Here are a few of the valuable tools and services you will have access to:

- My Showroom: Find and save information on vehicles and current offers in your area.
- My Dealers: Save details such as address and phone number for each of your preferred GM dealers.
- My Driveway: Access quick links to parts and service estimates, check trade-in values, or schedule a service appointment by adding the vehicles you own to your driveway profile.
- My Preferences: Manage your profile and use tools and forms with greater ease.

To sign up, visit the My GM.ca section within www.gm.ca.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program (U.S. and Canada)

This program is available to qualified applicants for cost reimbursement of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for the vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift for the vehicle.

For more information on the limited offer, visit www.gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text Telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details. TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada)

For U.S.-purchased vehicles, call **1-800-243-8872; (Text Telephone (TTY): 1-888-889-2438)**.

For Canadian-purchased vehicles, call **1-800-268-6800**.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

Calling for Assistance

When calling Roadside Assistance, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number.
- Telephone number of your location.
- Location of the vehicle.
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle.
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle.
- Description of the problem.

Coverage

Services are provided up to 5 years/160 000 km (100,000 mi), whichever comes first.

In the U.S., anyone driving the vehicle is covered. In Canada, a person driving the vehicle without permission from the owner is not covered.

Roadside Assistance is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Chevrolet and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Chevrolet and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or payment to an owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

Services Provided

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. A remote unlock may be available if you have OnStar. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow From a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Chevrolet dealer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is also given when the vehicle is stuck in the sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Service to change a flat tire with the spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is the owner's responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.
- **Battery Jump Start:** Service to jump start a dead battery.

Services Not Included in Roadside Assistance

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws.
- Legal fines.
- Mounting, dismounting, or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.
- Towing or services for vehicles driven on a non-public road or highway.

Services Specific to Canadian Purchased Vehicles

- **Fuel Delivery:** Reimbursement is approximately $5 Canadian. Diesel fuel delivery may be restricted. Propane and other fuels are not provided through this service.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Vehicle registration is required.
- **Trip Routing Service:** Detailed maps of North America are provided when requested either with the most direct route or the most scenic route. There is a limit of six requests per year. Additional travel information is also available. Allow three weeks for delivery.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** Must be over 250 kilometers from where your trip was started to qualify. General Motors of Canada Limited requires pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair orders. Once authorization has been received, the Roadside Assistance advisor will help to make arrangements and explain how to receive payment.
- **Alternative Service:** If assistance cannot be provided right away, the Roadside Assistance advisor may give permission to get local emergency road service. You will receive payment, up to $100, after sending the original receipt to Roadside Assistance. Mechanical failures may be covered, however any cost for parts and labor for repairs not covered by the warranty are the owner responsibility.

Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico)

Roadside Assistance is available 24 hours a day, 365 days of the year.

For detailed information about Roadside Assistance, please see the brochure provided with your new vehicle or visit our website at: www.chevrolet.com.mx. Navigate the site and click on “Asistencia en el Camino.” E-mail correspondence should be sent to: asistencia.chevrolet@gm.com.

To contact Roadside Assistance by phone, use the following numbers:

Mexico

01-800-466-0800

United States

1-866-466-8901

Canada

1-800-268-6800

Scheduling Service Appointments (U.S. and Canada)

When the vehicle requires warranty service, contact the dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising the service consultant of your transportation needs, the dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If the vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety related. If it is, please call the dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for the same day-repair.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Courtesy Transportation Program (U.S. and Canada)

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper-to-Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada), extended powertrain, and/or hybrid-specific warranties in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several Courtesy Transportation options are available to assist in reducing inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, GM helps to minimize inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, the dealer can offer one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Shuttle service is the preferred means of offering Courtesy Transportation. Dealers may provide shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round-trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters of the dealer's area.

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If the vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, and public transportation is used instead of the dealer's shuttle service, the expense must be supported by original receipts and can only be up to the maximum amount allowed by GM for shuttle service. In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See the dealer for information regarding the allowance amounts for reimbursement of fuel or other transportation costs.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

The dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if the vehicle is kept for an overnight warranty repair. Rental reimbursement will be limited and must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements,

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

It may not be possible to provide a like vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact the dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change, or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Collision Damage Repair (U.S. and Canada)

If the vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish the vehicle resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which the vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are the best choice to ensure that the vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part may be an acceptable choice to maintain the vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance; however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for the vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/ corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts is not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. The dealer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state-of-the-art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Insuring The Vehicle

Protect your investment in the GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to the GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you ensure that the vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If the vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that ensures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read the lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of the lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of.

Move the vehicle only if its position puts you in danger, or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.

Give only the necessary information to police and other parties involved in the crash.

For emergency towing see *Roadside Assistance Program (U.S. and Canada) on page 13-7* or *Roadside Assistance Program (Mexico) on page 13-9*.

Gather the following information:

- Driver name, address, and telephone number.
- Driver license number.
- Owner name, address, and telephone number.
- Vehicle license plate number.
- Vehicle make, model, and model year.
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Insurance company and policy number.
- General description of the damage to the other vehicle.

Choose a reputable repair facility that uses quality replacement parts. See “Collision Parts” earlier in this section.

If the airbag has inflated, see *What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? on page 3-33*.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that the vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take the vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by the GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with the repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember, if the vehicle is leased, you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as the cost stays within reasonable limits.

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on the engines, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give additional technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The Owner Manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

Without Portfolio: Owner Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $25.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

Current and Past Models

Technical Service Bulletins and Manuals are available for current and past model GM vehicles.

ORDER TOLL FREE:
1-800-551-4123 Monday - Friday
8:00 AM - 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. at: www.helminc.com.

Or write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Make checks payable in U.S. funds.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that the vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, and notify General Motors of Canada Limited. Call them at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety Branch
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, notify General Motors.

Call 1-800-222-1020, or write:

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

In Canada, call 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French), or write:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

This GM vehicle has a number of sophisticated computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy airbags in a crash, and, if so equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how you operate the vehicle, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may also retain the owner's personal preferences, such as radio pre-sets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle has an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Important: EDR data is recorded by the vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

GM will not access this data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

OnStar®

If the vehicle is equipped with an active OnStar system, that system may also record data in crash or near crash-like situations. The OnStar Terms and Conditions provides information on data collection and use and is available in the OnStar glove box kit, at www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada), or by pressing the button and speaking to an advisor.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as key fobs for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in GM vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other GM system containing personal information.

Radio Frequency Statement

This vehicle has systems that operate on a radio frequency that comply with Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and with Industry Canada Standards RSS-210/220/310.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause interference.
2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to any of these systems by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

✍ NOTES

Information Provided by
DEALER E-PROCESS

A

Accessories and Modifications 10-4
Accessory Power 9-30
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-67
Adjustments
Lumbar, Front Seats 3-4
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 10-17
Air Vents 8-3
Airbag
Adding Equipment to the Vehicle 3-39
Airbag System
Check 3-40
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 3-32
Passenger Sensing System 3-34
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 3-32
What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 3-33
Airbag System (cont.)
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 3-31
Where Are the Airbags? 3-29
Airbags
Passenger Status Indicator . . . 5-11
Readiness Light 5-10
Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles 3-38
System Check 3-28
Alarm System
Anti-Theft 2-9
AM-FM Radio 7-7
Antenna
Satellite Radio 7-14
Anti-Theft
Alarm System 2-9
Antilock Brake
System (ABS) 9-43
Warning Light 5-16
Appearance Care
Exterior 10-93
Interior 10-97
Ashtrays 5-6
Assistance Program, Roadside 13-7, 13-9
Audio Players 7-14
CD 7-14
Audio System
Chime Level Adjustment 5-6
Fixed Mast Antenna 7-14
Radio Reception 7-13
Theft-Deterrent Feature 7-2
Automatic
Door Locks 2-6
Headlamp System 6-3
Automatic Transmission 9-35
Fluid 10-13
Shift Lock Control Function Check 10-32
Axle, Front 10-30
Axle, Rear 10-31

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

B

Battery 10-29
Jump Starting 10-84
Load Management 6-7
Power Protection 6-7
Voltage and Charging Messages 5-23
Blade Replacement, Wiper ... 10-33
Bluetooth 7-20
Brake System Warning Light ... 5-15
Brakes 10-26
Antilock 9-43
Assist 9-45
Fluid 10-28
Parking 9-44
System Messages 5-23
Braking 9-3
Break-In, New Vehicle 9-26
Bulb Replacement 10-38
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) 10-38
Fog Lamps 6-5
Bulb Replacement (cont.)
Front Turn Signal, Parking, Sidemarker, and Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 10-36
Halogen Bulbs 10-35
Headlamp Aiming 10-35
Headlamps 10-35
License Plate Lamps 10-38
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps 10-37
Buying New Tires 10-61

C

Calibration 5-3
California
Fuel Requirements 9-52
Perchlorate Materials Requirements 10-3
Warning 10-3
Canadian Vehicle Owners iii
Capacities and Specifications 12-2
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 9-33
Tailgate 2-7
Winter Driving 9-17
Cautions, Danger, and Warnings iv
CD Player 7-14
Center Console Storage 4-3
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) 10-38
Chains, Tire 10-66
Charging System Light 5-12
Check
Engine Light 5-12
Ignition Transmission Lock 10-32
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 3-43
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 3-49

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Restraints (cont.)
Older Children 3-41
Securing 3-60, 3-62
Systems 3-46
Cigarette Lighter 5-5
Circuit Breakers 10-40
Cleaning
Exterior Care 10-93
Interior Care 10-97
Climate Control Systems 8-1
Air Conditioning 8-1
Heating 8-1
Clock 5-4
Cluster, Instrument 5-7
Clutch, Hydraulic 10-17
Collision Damage Repair 13-11
Compact Spare Tire 10-82
Compass 5-3
Control of a Vehicle 9-3
Convex Mirrors 2-13
Coolant
Engine 10-19
Engine Temperature Gauge ... 5-9
Cooling System 10-18
Engine Messages 5-24
Courtesy Transportation
Program 13-10
Cruise Control 9-49
Light 5-19
Cupholders 4-1
Customer Assistance 13-6
Offices 13-4, 13-5
Text Telephone (TTY)
Users 13-6
Customer Information
Service Publications
Ordering Information 13-13
Customer Satisfaction
Procedure 13-1, 13-3

D

Damage Repair, Collision 13-11
Danger, Warnings, and
Cautions iv
Data Recorders, Event 13-16
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Defensive Driving 9-2
Dome Lamps 6-6
Door
Ajar Messages 5-24
Locks 2-5
Power Locks 2-5
Rear Doors 2-7
Drive Belt Routing, Engine 12-4
Driver Information
Center (DIC) 5-19
Driving
Characteristics and
Towing Tips 9-56
Defensive 9-2
Drunk 9-2
Highway Hypnosis 9-16
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-17
If the Vehicle is Stuck 9-19
Loss of Control 9-5
Off-Road 9-6

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving (cont.)
Off-Road Recovery 9-5
Vehicle Load Limits 9-20
Wet Roads 9-16
Winter 9-17
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 1-16

E

Electrical Equipment, Add-On 9-67
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-40
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 10-40
Overload 10-39
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 10-17
Check and Service Engine Soon Light 5-12
Compartment Overview 10-6
Engine (cont.)
Coolant 10-19
Coolant Temperature Gauge . . . 5-9
Cooling System 10-18
Cooling System Messages . . . 5-24
Drive Belt Routing 12-4
Exhaust 9-33
Fan 10-25
Heater 9-29
Overheating 10-23
Power Messages 5-24
Pressure Light 5-18
Running While Parked 9-34
Starting 9-28
Engine Oil
Life System 10-12
Messages 5-24
Equipment, Towing 9-66
Event Data Recorders 13-16
Exit Lighting 6-7
Extender, Safety Belt 3-26
Exterior Cargo Lamps 6-5
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder . . . 6-2

F

Fan
Engine 10-25
Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner 10-17
Flash-to-Pass 6-2
Flashers, Hazard Warning 6-4
Flat Tire 10-67
Changing 10-68
Floor Mats 10-100
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 10-13
Brakes 10-28
Four-Wheel Drive Transfer Case 9-39
Power Steering 10-25
Washer 10-26
Fog Lamps
Bulb Replacement 6-5
Four-Wheel Drive 10-30, 9-39
Front Axle 10-30

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front Seats
Adjustment 3-3
Heated 3-8
Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker, and Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 10-36
Fuel 9-51
Additives 9-53
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 9-55
Filling the Tank 9-54
Fuels in Foreign Countries 9-52
Gasoline Specifications 9-52
Gauge 5-8
Recommended 9-51
Requirements, California 9-52
System Messages 5-25
Fuel Economy Driving 1-16
Full-Size Spare Tire 10-83
Fuses
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-40
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 10-40

G

Gasoline
Specifications 9-52
Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature 5-9
Fuel 5-8
Odometer 5-8
Speedometer 5-8
Tachometer 5-8
Trip Odometer 5-8
Warning Lights and Indicators 5-6
General Information
Service and Maintenance 11-1
Towing 9-56
Vehicle Care 10-3
Glove Box 4-1
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 13-7

H

Halogen Bulbs 10-35
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-4
Head Restraints 3-2
Headlamps 10-35
Aiming 10-35
Automatic 6-3
Bulb Replacement 10-35
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 6-2
Flash-to-Pass 6-2
High-Beam On Light 5-19
High/Low Beam Changer 6-2
Heated Front Seats 3-8
Heater
Engine 9-29
Heating and Air Conditioning . . . 8-1
High-Beam On Light 5-19
High-Speed Operation 10-54
Highway Hypnosis 9-16
Hill and Mountain Roads 9-17
Hood 10-5

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Horn 5-2
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 3-15
Hydraulic Clutch 10-17

I

Ignition Positions 9-27
Ignition Transmission Lock Check 10-32
Immobilizer 2-11
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 3-43
Infotainment 7-1
Instrument Cluster 5-7
Introduction iii

J

Jump Starting 10-84

K

Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 2-3
Keys 2-2

L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall 10-46
Lamp Messages 5-25
Lamps
Daytime Running (DRL) 6-2
Dome 6-6
Exterior Cargo 6-5
Exterior Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 6-2
License Plate 10-38
Malfunction Indicator 5-12
Lap Belt 3-26
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-21
LATCH System
Replacing Parts After a Crash 3-59
LATCH, Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 3-49
Latches, Seatback 3-7
Lighter, Cigarette 5-5
Lighting
Exit 6-7
Illumination Control 6-6
Lights
Airbag Readiness 5-10
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 5-16
Brake System Warning 5-15
Charging System 5-12
Cruise Control 5-19
Engine Oil Pressure 5-18
Flash-to-Pass 6-2
High-Beam On 5-19
High/Low Beam Changer 6-2
Safety Belt Reminders 5-9
Security 5-18
Tire Pressure 5-17
Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® 5-17
Up-Shift 5-16
Limited-Slip Rear Axle 9-48
Locks
Automatic Door 2-6
Door 2-5
Lockout Protection 2-6
Power Door 2-5
Safety 2-6

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Loss of Control 9-5
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 3-49
Lumbar Adjustment 3-4
Front Seats 3-4

M

Maintenance Records 11-10
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-6
Scheduled Maintenance 11-2
Transfer Case 9-39
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-12
Manual Mirrors 2-13
Manual Transmission 9-37
Fluid 10-16
Manual Windows 2-16
Messages
Battery Voltage and Charging 5-23
Brake System 5-23
Door Ajar 5-24
Engine Cooling System 5-24
Engine Oil 5-24
Engine Power 5-24
Fuel System 5-25
Lamp 5-25
Ride Control System 5-25
Service Vehicle 5-26
Tire 5-26
Transmission 5-26
Vehicle 5-22
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 2-15
Convex 2-13
Manual 2-13
Manual Rearview 2-14
Power 2-14
Monitor System, Tire Pressure 10-54

N

New Vehicle Break-In 9-26

O

Odometer 5-8
Trip 5-8
Off-Road 9-6
Driving 9-6
Recovery 9-5
Oil
Engine 10-9
Engine Oil Life System 10-12
Messages 5-24
Pressure Light 5-18
Older Children, Restraints 3-41
Online Owner Center 13-6
OnStar® System 1-17
Operation, Infotainment System 7-3
Ordering
Service Publications 13-13
Outlets
Power 5-5
Overheating, Engine 10-23

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

P

Park
Shifting Into 9-30
Shifting Out of 9-32
Parking 9-32
Brake 9-44
Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 10-33
Over Things That Burn 9-33
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 5-11
Passenger Sensing System . . . 3-34
Perchlorate Materials Requirements, California 10-3
Phone
Bluetooth 7-20
Pickup Conversion to Chassis Cab 9-67
Power
Door Locks 2-5
Mirrors 2-14
Outlets 5-5
Protection, Battery 6-7
Retained Accessory (RAP) . . . 9-30
Power (cont.)
Seat Adjustment 3-4
Steering Fluid 10-25
Windows 2-17
Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts 3-25
Privacy
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-17
Program
Courtesy Transportation 13-10
Proposition 65 Warning, California 10-3

R

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 13-17
Statement 13-17
Radios
AM-FM Radio 7-7
Reception 7-13
Satellite 7-11
Rear Axle 10-31
Limited-Slip 9-48
Rear Doors 2-7
Rear Seats 3-9, 3-10
Rear Storage 4-2
Rear Windows 2-18
Rearview Mirror Automatic Dimming 2-15
Rearview Mirrors 2-14
Reclining Seatbacks 3-5
Recommended Fuel 9-51
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-6
Records Maintenance 11-10
Recreational Vehicle Towing 10-88
Reimbursement Program, GM Mobility 13-7
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-3

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacement Bulbs 10-38
Replacement Parts
Airbags 3-40
Maintenance 11-9
Replacing Airbag System 3-40
Replacing LATCH System
Parts After a Crash 3-59
Replacing Safety Belt
System Parts After a
Crash 3-27
Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government 13-15
General Motors 13-15
U.S. Government 13-14
Restraints
Where to Put 3-47
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 9-30
Ride Control Systems
Limited Slip Rear Axle 9-48
Messages 5-25
Roads
Driving, Wet 9-16
Roadside Assistance
Program 13-7, 13-9
Rotation, Tires 10-59
Routing, Engine Drive Belt 12-4
Running the Vehicle While
Parked 9-34

S

Safety Belts 3-12
Care 3-27
Extender 3-26
How to Wear Safety Belts
Properly 3-15
Lap Belt 3-26
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-21
Reminders 5-9
Replacing After a Crash 3-27
Use During Pregnancy 3-25
Safety Defects Reporting
Canadian Government 13-15
General Motors 13-15
U.S. Government 13-14
Safety Locks 2-6
Safety System Check 3-26
Satellite Radio 7-11
Scheduled Maintenance 11-2
Scheduling Appointments 13-9
Seatback Latches 3-7
Seats
Adjustment, Front 3-3
Head Restraints 3-2
Heated Front 3-8
Lumbar Adjustment, Front 3-4
Power Adjustment, Front 3-4
Rear 3-9, 3-10
Reclining Seatbacks 3-5
Secondary Latch System 10-79
Securing Child
Restraints 3-60, 3-62
Security
Light 5-18
Vehicle 2-9
Service
Accessories and
Modifications 10-4
Doing Your Own Work 10-4

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Service (cont.)
Engine Soon Light 5-12
Maintenance Records 11-10
Maintenance, General Information 11-1
Parts Identification Label 12-1
Publications Ordering Information 13-13
Scheduling Appointments 13-9
Vehicle Messages 5-26
Servicing the Airbag 3-38
Shift Lock Control Function Check, Automatic Transmission 10-32
Shifting
Into Park 9-30
Out of Park 9-32
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 6-4
Spare Tire
Compact 10-82
Specifications and Capacities 12-2
Speedometer 5-8
StabiliTrak® System 9-47
Starter Switch Check 10-31
Starting the Engine 9-28
Steering 9-4
Fluid, Power 10-25
Wheel Adjustment 5-2
Stoplamps and Back-Up Lamps
Bulb Replacement 10-37
Storage
Rear 4-2
Storage Areas
Center Console 4-3
Glove Box 4-1
Stuck Vehicle 9-19
Sun Visors 2-18
Symbols iv
System
Infotainment 7-1

T

Tachometer 5-8
Tailgate 2-7
Taillamps
Bulb Replacement 10-37
Text Telephone (TTY) Users ... 13-6
Theft-Deterrent
Systems 2-11, 2-12
Immobilizer 2-11
Time 5-4
Tires
Buying New Tires 10-61
Chains 10-66
Changing 10-68
Compact Spare 10-82
Designations 10-49
Different Size 10-63
Full-Size Spare 10-83
If a Tire Goes Flat 10-67
Inflation Monitor System 10-55
Inspection 10-59
Messages 5-26
Pressure 10-54
Pressure Light 5-17
Pressure Monitor System ... 10-54
Rotation 10-59
Secondary Latch System ... 10-79
Sidewall Labeling 10-46

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires (cont.)
Terminology and Definitions 10-49
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 10-63
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 10-65
Wheel Replacement 10-65
When It Is Time for New Tires 10-61
Towing
Driving Characteristics 9-56
Equipment 9-66
General Information 9-56
Recreational Vehicle 10-88
Trailer 9-60
Vehicle 10-87
Traction
Control System (TCS) 9-46
Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak® Light 5-17
Limited-Slip Rear Axle 9-48
Trailer Towing 9-60
Transfer Case 9-39
Transmission
Automatic 9-35
Fluid, Automatic 10-13
Fluid, Manual 10-16
Messages 5-26
Transportation Program, Courtesy 13-10
Trip Odometer 5-8
Truck-Camper Loading Information 9-26
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-4
Turn Signal
Bulb Replacement 10-37

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading 10-63
Up-Shift Light 5-16
Using this Manual iv

V

Vehicle
Canadian Owners iii
Control 9-3
Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Load Limits 9-20
Messages 5-22
Security 2-9
Towing 10-87
Vehicle Care
Tire Pressure 10-52
Vehicle Identification
Service Parts Identification Label 12-1
Ventilation, Air 8-3
Visors 2-18

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

W

Warning
Brake System Light 5-15
Warning Lights, Gauges, and
Indicators 5-6
Warnings iv
Cautions and Danger iv
Hazard Flashers 6-4
Washer Fluid 10-26
Wheels
Alignment and Tire
Balance 10-65
Different Size 10-63
Replacement 10-65
When It Is Time for New
Tires 10-61
Where to Put the Restraint 3-47
Windows 2-16
Manual 2-16
Power 2-17
Rear 2-18
Windshield
Wiper/Washer 5-2
Winter
Driving 9-17
Wiper Blade Replacement 10-33

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS